



威明顿中文课程

Wēimíngdùn zhōngwén kèchéng

Province-Level Names

安徽	Anhui	河北	Hebei	辽宁	Liaoning	四川	Sichuan
北京	Beijing	黑龙江	Heilongjiang	内蒙古	Nei Mongol	天津	Tianjin
福建	Fujian	河南	Henan	宁夏	Ningxia	新疆	Xinjiang
甘肃	Gansu	湖北	Hubei	青海	Qinghai	西藏	Xizang
广东	Guangdong	湖南	Hunan	陕西	Shaanxi	云南	Yunnan
广西	Guangxi	江苏	Jiangsu	山东	Shandong	浙江	Zhejiang
贵州	Guizhou	江西	Jiangxi	上海	Shanghai		
海南	Hainan	吉林	Jilin	山西	Shanxi	台湾	Taiwan

Table of Contents

Page number

5 Reminders for instructors and students

6 Preface: Introduction to Mandarin Chinese

7 Pinyin: Initials

8 Pinyin: Finals

9 Learn to Read and Write Chinese Characters

11 Tones

13 Pinyin “Alphabet”

14 Study Hints for Language Students

15 Basic Grammar Practice

16-21 **Lesson 1** (Numbers & Basic Words)

21 Bible books

22-26 **Lesson 2** (Practical Vocabulary)

27-33 **Lesson 3** (The Preaching Work)

30 Question Words

34-43 **Lesson 4** (The Kingdom Hall)

44-50 **Lesson 5** (Family)

46 Adjectives

51-56 **Lesson 6** (Heaven)

57-63 **Lesson 7** (Satan’s World)

64-72 **Lesson 8** (Religion)

73-80 **Lesson 9** (Relationship with God & Prayer)

81-86 **Lesson 10** (Body Parts & Clothing)

87-92 **Lesson 11** (Everyday Vocabulary)

Table of Contents

93-94 **Lesson 12** (Eastern Religion)

95-99 **Lesson 12** (Quiz)

100-106 **Lesson 13** (Time)

107-112 **Lesson 14** (Bible Study)

113-119 **Lesson 15** (The Time of the End)

120-126 **Lesson 16** (Personality)

127-132 **Lesson 17** (Weather)

133-138 **Lesson 18** (Theocratic Vocabulary)

Appendix

139-145 For Reference – List of Useful Verbs

146-147 Things You May Hear in the Ministry

148 Chinese Food Menu

149 How to Say “Of”

150 Memorial of Christ’s Death Vocabulary

151 How to invite someone to the Memorial

152 Suggested presentations 1/02 KM insert

153 How to Start Studies in the Bible Teach book 1/06 KM insert

154-6 How to Offer the Bible Teach Book KM 1/06 Insert

156-7 Question, Scripture, and Chapter KM 1/06

157-8 Suggested Brochure Presentations 6/05 KM insert

159-160 Telephone Witnessing 1/10 KM insert

161 Chinese Family Tree Vocabulary

161-168 Supplemental exercises to be used during class or for homework

169-171 Index

Reminders for instructors and students:

This textbook was written in full color in order to help expedite the learning process. Color helps to make the learning process more interesting. Colorful pages make a bigger impact on language learner's brains. If possible, please print out this book in color.

Instructors: try to make the student version of this textbook & related audio files available to students at least a week *before* starting lesson one. This way, students will have time to read over the preface, study lesson one, and do the homework for lesson one. It is best for students to study each lesson and do the related homework prior to covering that particular lesson in the classroom. (The student version of this textbook does not contain the QUIZ in lesson 12 on pages 91-95. Instead, pages 91-95 are blank and can be used for note-taking.)

Homework: Students may want to make copies of certain pages (i.e. grammar charts) in order to turn their homework in to instructors for correction. Students will need to buy a small notebook for writing daily journal entries in Chinese during the class. This journal should be turned in weekly to enable instructors to write replies and comments to each student. In this way, students and instructors can use the journals to have a written conversation in Chinese. *The purpose of the journals is not to correct the student's mistakes, but to enable students to learn to express themselves in Chinese.*

Students will also need to purchase English to Mandarin Chinese and Mandarin Chinese to English dictionaries. Also, if possible, students should borrow "Pimsleur Mandarin Chinese for English speakers" from their local libraries and start practicing at home before class starts. When listening to the Pimsleur CDs, be sure to repeat new expressions out loud when prompted to.

Mandarin Chinese

Mandarin Chinese is the official language of Mainland China and the nearby island of Taiwan. There are over 1.3 billion people living in Mainland China alone. This means that at least one out of seven people on the planet speak Mandarin Chinese, making it the language spoken by more people than any other language on earth.

Originally, Mandarin Chinese was a dialect of the Chinese language spoken by peoples living in the north of China. A dialect is a spoken variation of the same language. Perhaps at one time dialects began as regional accents, but after hundreds of years these accents have become so different from one another that people from different areas no longer understand one another. Today, even people from two villages just a few miles apart may speak different dialects and may not understand one another well. Yet, because many Chinese dialects (such as Cantonese or Fujianese) originated from the same language, they share the same written language. So, written Chinese is universally understood by literate people in China (see page 6 for a discussion of Simplified and Traditional characters). Still, without a common spoken language, Chinese people from different areas of the country would be unable to communicate unless they wrote down what they wanted to say. Therefore, Mandarin was chosen to become the national language of China. In most areas, children are required to learn Mandarin in school, and teachers speak Mandarin in the classroom. Because of this, most educated Chinese people can speak Mandarin well, though many still have regional accents. So, do not be confused if one Chinese person pronounces a word differently from another Chinese person. For example, a person from the south of China may have difficulty pronouncing the letter “n”, so instead they say “l”. Because of this, many people say “Li hao” instead of “Ni hao”. A person from another area of China may not be able to pronounce the “sh” sound, so instead they say “s”. Others have difficulty pronouncing the letter “f”. There are many variations of this type because Mandarin is a second language not only for us, but also for many Chinese people as well. Another interesting fact is that some Americans can learn a better Mandarin accent than even some Chinese people. How can that be? Well, it is because English and Mandarin share many of the same sounds (for example “n”, “sh”, and “f”), whereas some Chinese dialects lack these sounds. The biggest challenge for English speakers of Mandarin Chinese is pronouncing the four tones, and we will address this subject later.

Pin Yin: Mandarin Chinese Phonetics

Many people are intimidated when thinking of the Chinese language because it's system of writing is quite complex. A symbol, or “character”, represents each word in the Chinese language. These characters are not phonetic, any more than “\$”, “%”, or “&” are phonetic. Just as one cannot tell how to pronounce “%” merely by looking at it, one cannot pronounce a Chinese character without first learning how it is said. Also, like “\$” and “%”, Chinese characters represent entire words, “dollar” and “percent”. Since there are literally thousands of Chinese characters, it would be quite a challenge to learn this language without the help of phonetics. “Pinyin” phonetics bridge the gap between spoken and written Chinese. Moreover, Pinyin is quite straight forward and easy to learn.

Many of us are able to say “hello” in Mandarin: “Ni hao”. Yet, how many of us can recognize the characters 你好? Likely, not very many. Therefore, Pinyin (which literally means “phonetic sounds”), is incredibly useful for anyone who wants to learn Mandarin Chinese. In fact, pinyin was developed in China and is used in Chinese schools to help young people there learn characters. So, because of this, Pinyin letters were not meant to correspond to English sounds, but rather to Chinese ones.

The rules of Pinyin spelling and pronunciation are quite simple. There are very few exceptions to the rules of Pinyin pronunciation. Please remember, though, that the most important part of learning a language is learning proper pronunciation. Work hard to thoroughly understand Pinyin. Keep in mind that although Pinyin uses the same letters as English, they do not represent the same sounds. Each letter in Pinyin represents a Chinese sound, so you will have to re-learn “our” alphabet. Once you fully understand this packet, you will be well on your way to learning to speak Mandarin Chinese!

The Pronunciation of Pinyin Letters

Remember, the guidelines given on this page are not exact. They are merely provided to help you to get an idea of how these sounds are pronounced. Please also remember that nothing can replace listening carefully to Chinese people and tapes or CDs. Try to repeat new words aloud as often as possible. It is said that reading and pronouncing a word aloud twenty times is equal in helpfulness to reading a word seventy-five times silently. It is also helpful to record yourself pronouncing these sounds. After recording yourself reading Chinese words aloud, play the tape back and compare your accent with a Chinese person’s accent. Also, remember that it is better to over-accentuate the sounds at first and to speak slowly. This will help your tongue to become more accustomed to these “foreign” sounds. Later, work on speeding up and speaking more fluently.

Initials

1. **b, p, m, f** : Basically sound like the English letters b, p, m, and f, except when combined with an “o”. If put with an “o”, the end result sounds like a New Yorker saying the end of the word “door”. Listen carefully to the teacher pronouncing these sounds.
2. **d, t, n, l, g, k, h** : Basically sound like the English letters d, t, n, l, g, k, and h, except they are produced towards the back of the throat and use more breath.
3. **j**: “gee”, **q**: “chee”, **x**: “shee” :The tongue is not curled for these sounds.
4. **zh**: “jr”, **ch**: “chr”, **sh**: “shr”, **r**: very different from “r” in English : The tongue should be curled towards the roof of your mouth when saying any of these 4 letters. The tongue is in the exact same position for all four letters.
5. **z**: “dz”, **c**: “ts” as in “cats”, **s**: Think of a snake hissing, “ss”. Your tongue should be near or touching your front teeth for these letters.
6. **y**: “ee”, **w**: “oo” (NOT “yee” or “woo”) These letters have the same pronunciation as the finals “i” and “u”.

Finals

1. **-a:** “ah” as in “father” . This letter has different sounds depending on what final it is part of . See “-an”, “-ang”, “-ian”, and “-uan” .
2. **-ai:** “ai” as in “aisle” , **-ao:** “ow” as in “cow”, but softer, and don’t close your lips when saying it.
3. **-e:** “uh” as in “bun” or sometimes said like the “e” in “yet”, **-ei:** “ei” as in “eight”
4. **-i:** “ee” as in the Spanish “i” , **-ia:** “yah” , It’s important to emphasize the “aah” sound at the end of this final, imagine you are at the dentist saying “aaah” . **-ie:** “ye” as in “yet”, **-iu:** “yo” , originally, this final was spelled -iou, then later the “o” was dropped. **-iao:** “yow”, but softer, **-ian:** “yen”, the “a” in this final sounds like the “e” in yet.
5. **-o:** like the “o” in “soft” . Keep your lips open when saying the end of this sound. **-ou:** “oh” , You should close your lips at the end of this sound.
6. **-u:** “oo” as in choose, but sounds more hollow. Imagine that your mouth is full of marbles while saying it. **-ua:** “wah” , It’s very important to emphasize the “aah” sound at the end of this final, like you are at the dentist. **-ui:** “way” , this final originally was spelled “uei”, then the “e” was dropped. **-un:** “wun” , **-uo:** “oor” as a New Yorker would say “door”, **-uai:** “why” .
7. **-ü -üe -üan -ün** (listen carefully to how Chinese say these)
8. **-an:** “Anne” like a British person would say it. This “a” is very different from English “a”s. Listen carefully to how Chinese people pronounce this sound.
9. **-en:** “un” as in “bun”, but softer. **-in:** “ine” as in “machine” . (The “n” in “-an”, “-en”, and “-in” is said with the tip of your tongue touching the back of your front teeth. So, it sounds softer than an English “n” . Sometimes, it’s hard to even hear a Chinese person say “n” because it is so soft.)
10. **-ang:** “ahng”, this has a long “aaah” sound in it, like you are at the dentist. Try saying the word “long” with a big smile. Then you will hear the “-ang” sound. **-eng:** “ung” as in “lung” . **-ing:** “ing” as in “laughing”, but softer. Chinese people don’t pronounce the “ing” as hard as Americans do. Sometimes, it sounds so soft it is difficult to hear them say it.
11. **-ong:** “ohng”, Listen carefully to how Chinese people say this sound. It is nasal and different from English. It includes a long “oh” sound.
12. **-iang:** “yahng”, again emphasize the “aah” to sound like you are at the dentist.
13. **-iong:** “yohng” just like “-ong” but it starts with a “y” sound.
14. **-uan:** “wan” as in “wand” (the “n” is said with the tongue at the front of the mouth, touching the front teeth), **-uang:** “wahng”, again, remember being at the dentist... “aaah”!

Learn to Read and Write Chinese Characters

To many people, the most intimidating thing about the Chinese language is its unique system of reading and writing. Yet, to so many students of Chinese, the most interesting and fun part of learning the language are the characters. Some people love the characters so much that they learn to read and write, but never learn how to speak Chinese! This course, though, focuses on how to give a witness in Chinese. So, we need a well rounded knowledge of basic Chinese in order to do that. This, of course, includes having some understanding of Chinese characters.

We have already discussed that written Chinese is a system of symbols, just like “%” or “\$” are symbols. Yet, many characters have stories behind them, meaning that they are actually pictures that tell a story. Some have wondered if one particular Chinese character has reference to the Garden of Eden. Since the origins of Chinese characters are very ancient, we really cannot say for sure, but it is interesting nonetheless. It contains two trees: 林 and a woman: 女. What does this character mean? Greed: 婪. As you can see, Chinese characters become much less intimidating and much more interesting when one learns the stories behind them. In this class, we will learn some of these stories and have some fun learning to read and write Chinese.

Chinese characters are frequently composed of several simple characters all put together, to build a new, more complex word. Some examples were given above. One more example involves the character for “tree”: 木. Can you see the trunk, branches, and roots? So, if that represents a tree, then how would a Chinese person write forest? 森. Logically, a forest has several trees in it, so one of the characters for forest is three trees put together in one character. Many Chinese characters are logical like this.

To make the logic simpler, Chinese characters are generally comprised of two main parts: a “radical” and a “phonetic”. The radical lends meaning to the character, while the phonetic gives an idea how the character might be pronounced. Radicals and phonetics are usually also simpler characters with simple meanings when they appear by themselves (like the character for “tree” that we saw above). Another example is 心(xīn), the character meaning “heart”. This character is also used as a radical to build words with more complicated meanings. Here are some examples: 想(xiǎng), 思(sī), 忍(rěn), and 忠(zhōng). Notice that the bottom half of these characters is the same. This is the “heart” radical. Since “heart” is the radical for all of these characters, then their meanings should all relate somehow to the literal or figurative heart. Let’s take a look at their meanings. 1. 想(xiǎng): to miss. 2. 思(sī): to meditate. 3. 忍(rěn): to endure. 4. 忠(zhōng): loyal. So, we can clearly see that the radical really does influence the meaning of the character. All of these characters involve the figurative heart. If you have a basic understanding of radicals, then you will be able to understand much about Chinese writing. There are over 200 radicals, but only about 50 are used frequently. Many radicals resemble the thing they symbolize, so they are not too difficult to remember.

This leads us next to the phonetic part of Chinese characters. What are some examples of phonetics? Well, two of the characters above are good examples of this, as well. We know that the radical of 想(xiǎng) is the character 心(xīn). So, that leaves the top part, 相, as the phonetic of this character. How is 相 pronounced, then? Xiāng.

So, this helps us to see where 想 (xiǎng) got its pronunciation from. The top half of this particular character, 忄, gives us a clue about its *pronunciation* and the bottom half of the character tells us something about the *meaning* of the character. Similarly, the radical for the character 忠 (zhōng) is 心 (xīn), therefore that leaves 中 as this character's phonetic. How is 中 pronounced? Zhōng. It is exactly the same! Yet, the meanings of these phonetics have nothing in common. They usually just have similar pronunciation. But, how do we figure out which part of a character is the radical, and which is the phonetic? We are often reduced to guessing! Often it is a 50/50 chance either way. Nonetheless, knowing these facts about Chinese characters helps to take much of the mystery out of them.

Much time has passed since the invention of the Chinese system of writing. Over hundreds of years, most languages change dramatically. (Just read some of the King James translation of the Bible as proof of that!) For this reason, today's radicals and phonetics are not 100% reliable. Sometimes the character does not sound like its phonetic and means something quite different from its radical. Whereas some changes in the Chinese language were due to time, the government of Mainland China introduced other changes. Why? Some Chinese characters are made up of so many smaller characters that they become difficult to remember and time-consuming to write. Therefore, in the 1950's, the government of Communist China reasoned that if the most frequently used and most difficult characters were simplified, then more people could be taught how to read and write. How was this done? It must not have been an easy task. For example, a frequently used character in Chinese is 為, meaning "for" or "because". This character is quite complex, so the Chinese government simplified it, eliminating many of the lines (or strokes) that originally composed it. Yet, they strived to keep the basic "impression" of the character. So, the new version looks like this: 为. Many simplified characters resemble Chinese calligraphy which, when written quickly and skillfully, blends many of the strokes together, creating a graceful impression of the word.

There are many strong opinions about simplified and traditional characters. Some people who were raised in Mainland China and who learned simplified characters as children love them and think that they are superior to the "old" kind. On the other hand, some older persons and people from Taiwan and Hong Kong think that China's communist government desecrated their ancient and beautiful system of writing. For some people, the issue is political in nature. Many people dislike anything produced by a communist government, including simplified characters. Those in favor of Communism feel a patriotic pride for the achievements of their government. We, on the other hand, are obviously neutral when it comes to these political views. But, since pinyin was developed in Mainland China, all of the pinyin literature produced by the Society uses simplified characters. So, this book will also use simplified characters.

Each Chinese character represents one syllable, or one pinyin word, such as "xiang" or "zhong". Because Chinese words are monosyllabic, there are only about 400 syllables possible (not counting the tonal variations) in the Mandarin language. This means that Mandarin Chinese has an *enormous* number of homonyms (words that sound the same).

In English, words that sound alike such as "meat" and "meet" are relatively rare, but homonyms are the norm in Mandarin. How do the Chinese avoid confusion, then? Often, several words must be combined to form a distinct word. For example, the word 和 (hé) means "peace", but when used alone, it sounds exactly like the words for "shut", "box",

“lotus”, quill”, “jaws”, ... and the homonyms go on and on. So, that can become quite confusing. So, in order to make the meaning clear, 和 (hé) is often combined with another word that also means “peace”, 平(píng) . Together, 和平 (héping), unmistakably sounds like “peace” to a Chinese person. So, the Chinese language may seem redundant at times, but with good reason. At other times, two words with different meanings are put together to create a new thought. In English this is also done. “Basket” and “ball” by themselves are words, but together they form a new word: “basketball”. An example of this in Chinese is: 中国 (zhōngguó). The character 中 alone means “middle”. The character 国 alone means “country”. Yet, together, these two characters 中国 (zhōngguó) mean “China” or literally, “Middle Kingdom”. These compound words are written without spaces between them in the Pinyin phonetic system. This makes it clear that there **should not be a pause in between** the words when speaking. One should say “zhōngguó” and not “zhōng...guó”. If a person were to pause at the wrong time when speaking Chinese, a Chinese person may not understand what is being said.

Chinese characters are made up of strokes. In order to write a character properly, these strokes must be written in the proper order. Some dictionaries (such as “Write and Write Chinese” by Rita Mei-Wah Choi) include the stroke order for every character in the dictionary.

In order to be able to write Chinese well, you must write each new character over and over again (using the proper stroke order) until you feel comfortable with it. Generally, this means writing each character at least 50 to 100 times. This is really the only way to get them right! Even Chinese children learn this way. There are many websites that assist in learning the stroke order of common Chinese characters.

(*For more information on Chinese, please also see “A language that is Radically Different” gl 75 5/22 pages 9-13)

Tones

One thing about Mandarin that Chinese people pick up much more easily than non-Chinese people is the four tones. All Chinese dialects have tones (some have eleven or more), so Chinese people are accustomed to their use and significance. To some non-Chinese speaking people, though, the concept of tones can be quite difficult to get used to. Yet, in order to speak Mandarin understandably we must get used to the idea. What are tones, exactly?

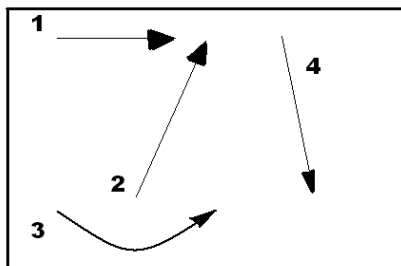
Tones are different pitches of the voice that in English are used to convey different emotions or shades of meaning. For example, a curious “What?” has a very different tone from an angry “What?!” In Chinese, though, tones do not signify different emotions, instead they signify completely different words. The difference between the words for “horse” and “mother” in Mandarin is purely tonal. “Horse” is a low tone whereas “mother” is a high tone. Yet, they are both pronounced “ma”. So, it is clear that being able to differentiate between the four tones is essential to being understood when speaking Mandarin. At first, we may feel a little silly saying the four tones, but with practice it will become second nature to us.

Tones one through four are as follows: **First Tone**: a high, level tone – your voice should not rise or drop. Think of how a robot would talk: very flat, not falling or rising. A common mistake that students make is not going high enough- if you can go a little higher, then do it.

Second tone: starting at the middle range of your voice and sharply rising up to a higher tone. A common mistake students make while saying 2nd tone is starting too high; if you start out too high, then you won't be able to make your voice go much higher. Be sure to start second tone in the middle range of your voice, then sharply go higher. The third tone has two parts: **Full 3rd tone:** (used when a word is at the end of a phrase or sentence) go as low as you can go and then raise your voice slightly at the end. Put your hand on your chest as you say 3rd tone. You should be able to feel your chest vibrate. This tone may feel a bit uncomfortable at first, but that means that you are doing it right. **Half 3rd tone:** most third tones are half third tones. Go as low as you can go and do not make your voice rise at the end. This tone is shorter than full third tone. **Fourth tone:** Starts high, then sharply drops to a lower tone. Think of a karate chop, or say it as you are stomping your foot. There is also a **fifth, neutral** tone. This tone has no special emphasis. It is light and short. Often, people from Taiwan do not use the 5th tone. They simply use the original tone of the character when reading or speaking. It is often easier for native English speakers to do this, also. It can be quite challenging to properly pronounce neutral tones.

Please remember that Mandarin tones are all said with your speaking voice. Do not sing your tones. Each person has a different vocal range. Women generally have a higher voice than men. So, in general, women's first tones will sound higher than a man's. And a man's third tone will sound lower than a woman's. What is important is each tone **in relation** to the other tones we use. When pronouncing two or more syllables that make up a word, try to make the tones flow naturally. This will take a lot practice, such as reading out loud. Practice until you do not have to pause before each tone changes. You may pause between phrases and sentences, of course.

The four tones in the normal speaking range:



First tone is short, high, and does not waver. (Think: robot)

Second tone starts at the middle to low range and sharply goes higher.

Third tone curves up a little, but is as low as you can go.

Fourth tone starts high and sharply goes lower.

“Fifth” tone has no special emphasis- it is short and light.

Using your hands to “gesture” the tones as you speak can really help to train your voice. Imitate the direction of the tones with your hand as you speak. Try to do this each time you speak Chinese in class, even if it makes you feel a little silly. It is good to get used to feeling silly while learning a foreign language! Don't take yourself too seriously! 😊

The Pinyin "Alphabet"

The pinyin alphabet is divided up into two parts: Initials and Finals. These words are self-explanatory: initials begin words and finals end them. Initials and finals can also be words by themselves which can *change their spelling* (see pinyin chart).

Initials:

- 1) B, P, M, F
- 2) D, T, N, L, G, K, H
- 3) J, Q, X
- 4) Zh, Ch, Sh, R
- 5) Z, C, S
- 6) Y*, and W*

Finals:

- 7) -a, -ai, -ao,
- 8) -e, -ei,
- 9) -i, -ia, -ie, -iu (iou), -iao, -ian,
- 10) -o, -ou,
- 11) -u, -ua, -ui (-uei), -un (-uen), -uo, -uai,
- 12) -an, -en, -in,
- 13) -ang, -eng, -ing, -ong,
- 14) -iang, -iong, -uan, -uang

J,Q,X,Y rule: all "u"s occurring after these 4 initials are always pronounced like "ü", but spelled like "u". So for example, "ju" sounds like "jü". All "a"s occurring after these initials are pronounced like "e" (with the exceptions of "-iang" / "yang"). This rule explains the pronunciation differences between "ju" and "zhu", "xuan" and "shuan", "qun" and "chun", "wan" and "yan", etc.

(*see "i" and "u". When a final that begins with "i" or "u" stands by itself as a word, the "i" becomes a "y" and the "u" becomes a "w". "Y" and "i" have identical pronunciations. "W" and "u" also have identical pronunciations.)

Mandarin words are made up of three combinations: an initial plus a final, an initial alone, or a final alone. Because of this, words in Mandarin are very short and relatively easy to spell.

STUDY HINTS FOR LANGUAGE STUDENTS

TIPS ON LEARNING CHARACTERS:

1. If you find an unfamiliar character, find its pronunciation and usage.
Write it and say it out loud at least 15 times. Then be sure to use it in daily speech.
2. Memorize short phrases or sentences rather than individual characters.
3. Learn the ideas, not just the characters.
4. Make flashcards with pictures on one side & words on the other. Practice with them daily.

HOW DO I PAY ATTENTION IN CLASS?

1. Ask mentally: Do I really understand the explanation? If not, ASK.
2. Do not heave a sigh of relief and “tune out” when you are not called upon to comment.
3. Respond mentally to each comment and question; conduct a mental dialogue on the subject matter if you are not actually conversing with teacher or classmates.
4. When instructors speak only Chinese, try to focus - interpret body language & gestures, and try to pick out familiar words. Do not “tune out” and assume you can’t understand.

LANGUAGE LEARNING MEANS HABIT DEVELOPMENT.

1. Listen to and imitate (silently, unless instructed otherwise) your teacher’s pronunciation and speech patterns.
2. Study and read aloud; work on good pronunciation habits, tones, and fluency.

HOMEWORK IS A MUST !

- TIPS TO MAKE IT EASIER & MORE EFFECTIVE...

1. Each lesson is packed with information, so when studying, it is best to divide the homework into smaller units.
Work about 10 to 15 minutes on a unit; take mini breaks between units.
Go for a walk & clear your head, then be sure to RETURN to your language assignment.
2. Do your homework when it is assigned! Do you cheat yourself of golden opportunities to master vocabulary, syntax, and language patterns?
3. Study out loud. Share the load by using your eyes, ears, and tongue.
4. Act out new words as you learn them. This is a wonderful memory aid & it’s fun, too!
5. Find a study partner and speak Chinese with them. Practice flashcards together.



DO NOT FALL BEHIND.

1. Try to spend at least 1 hour practicing & doing homework daily.
2. Language learning means habit formation, and you cannot cram habits.
3. Build!!! on what you learned yesterday, last week, last month, etc.
One does not stop learning when class is over.
4. You can only go as far as you THINK you can - don’t assume the task is too difficult – just TRY it.
5. Don’t be afraid of making mistakes. Learn to laugh at yourself.

Language learning means making mistakes.

Excerpt from *Awake!* December 8, 2003, pg. 29

Learning a Foreign Language

Would you like to learn a foreign language? The Polish magazine *Poradnik Domowy* gives the following pointers. “An inherent feature of learning a language is making mistakes. Accepting this fact is the first step to success.” Added to this is “the willingness to take risks.” If we do not know how to say something, “sometimes we have to trust our intuition, or we simply need to guess,” which is better than refraining from speaking. “We rarely realize that the source of our problems may be fear or shame,” says the magazine. “If we manage to overcome these weaknesses, no doubt we will progress faster.” A good teacher can also help one to overcome fear and progress faster.



Grammar Practice



NOUN: A person, place, animal, state, or thing. (For example: Harry, house, dog, car, etc.)

PRONOUN: A small class of words that replace a noun or noun phrase.

(For example: I, me, he, she, them, who, it, we, etc.)

ADJECTIVE: A word which describes or modifies a *noun*.

(For example: the red car, a thin girl, the black cow, dark room, etc.)

VERB: An action, state, or relation between two things. In English, verbs often start with "to". (For example: to run, to be, to love, to talk, to go, to do, etc)

An **AUXILIARY VERB** is a helping verb, it goes *before the main verb*.

(For example: She wants to run. , He has to go. , or Terry will go to the game.)

The **OBJECT** of a verb is a *noun* that the verb modifies.

(For example: to eat food, walk on the road, read a book, etc. To find out what the object is, ask yourself: What is being eaten? The answer, food, would be the object.)

ADVERB: A word which modifies *verbs, adjectives, other adverbs, or clauses*. In English, adverbs often end in -ly. (For example: quickly run, slowly walk, carefully write, etc.) Other examples of adverbs include: "now", "very", "well", "here", etc.

The **SUBJECT** of a sentence is the main *noun* or *pronoun* that the sentence is talking about. (The dog barked. or He ran quickly to the market.)

QUESTION PARTICLE: (Chinese) A word usually used at the end of a sentence which makes the sentence into a question. (ma 吗, ne 呢, ba 吧, ya 呀, etc)

GRAMMAR PARTICLE: (Chinese) A word that only has a "grammar" meaning and usage. (For example: de 的, le 了, zhi 之, zhe 者, etc.)

VERB-OBJECT COMPLEX or VO (Chinese) A verb and object that are used together so much that they are found in dictionaries together. (For example: chīfàn 吃饭: to eat food)

**Grammar formulas used in this class have the purpose of breaking down and simplifying Chinese grammar. We use abbreviations to stand for the above grammar words. To make a sentence, just plug words into the formula. Here are some examples of "grammar formulas" and how to break them down.

Grammar Formula: S - VO = (Subject- Verb-Object)

examples: #1 He ate food. "He" = Subject, "ate" = Verb, "food" = Object.

#2 Henry read the book. "Henry" = Subject, "read" = Verb, "book" = Object

Grammar Formula: S - Aux.V - VO = (Subject-Auxiliary verb- Verb-Object)

examples: #1 She wants to go to China. (Ask: Where does she want to go? China. This is the object of the sentence.)

"She" = Subject, "wants" = Auxiliary Verb, "to go" = Verb, "China" = Object

#2 He will read a book. (Ask: What will he read? A book. This is the object of this sentence.)

"He" = Subject, "will" = Auxiliary Verb, "read" = Verb, "a book" = Object.



数字 Shùzì Numbers : For homework fill in the blanks below

0 - 10	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
	líng 零	yī 一	èr 二	sān 三	sì 四	wǔ 五	liù 六	qī 七	bā 八	jiǔ 九	shí 十
11 - 20		11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
		shíyī 十一	shí'èr 十二	?	shísì 十四	shíwǔ 十五	?	shíqī 十七	?	shíjiǔ 十九	èrshí 二十
21- 30		21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
		èrshíyī	èrshíèr	èrshísān	èrshísì	?	èrshíliù	èrshíqī	èrshíbā	èrshíjiǔ	sānshí
40 - 100		40	50	60	70	80	90	97	98	99	100
		sìshí	?	liùshí	?	?	?	?	?	?	yībǎi
101-110		101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110
		yībǎi- língyī	?	yībǎi- língsān	yībǎi- língsì	?	?	?	?	?	yībǎi- yīshí
111-119		111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119	120
		yībǎi- yīshíyī	?	?	yībǎi- yīshísì	?	?	?	?	?	yībǎi- èrshí
1000s		1000	2000	3000	4000	5000	6000	7000	8000	9000	10,000
		yīqiān 一千	?	?	?	?	?	?	?	jiǔqiān 九千	yīwàn 一万

Ordinal numbers: How to say 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, etc.

Just say "dì" before the number: 1st: dì yī, 2nd: dì èr, 3rd: dì sān, 4th: dì ? , 10th: ? , etc
ex: Mandarin, 1st lesson : pǔtōnghuà dì yī kè ; Mandarin, 15th lesson : pǔtōnghuà dì shíwǔ kè

Homework exercise: Circle the expressions below that would need to have "dì" in them if they were said in Chinese:

1. "three people" / "the 3rd person" / "trinity"
2. "the fourth point" / "four points" / "quadrupal"
3. "the first king" / "kingship" / "one king"
4. "the 5th book" / "five books" / "penmanship"

John 17th chapter, 3rd verse = Yuēhànfúyīn dì shíqī zhāng dì sān jié:
tāmen búduàn xīshōu zhīshì rènshi nǐ zhè dúyīdezhēnshén bìngqiě rènshi nǐ suǒ chāilái
" 他们 不断 吸收 知识, 认识 你 这 独一的真神, 并且 认识 你 所 差来
de yēsūjīdū jiù kěyǐ yǒu yǒngshēng
的耶稣基督, 就可以 有 永生 。 " (John 17:3)

Mandarin Chinese Lesson One: Basic Words

As part of your homework, make flashcards & memorize new vocabulary words. Work with a partner if you can.

nǐhǎo
你好 *hello*

nínhǎo
您好 *(formal) hello*

wǒ hěnhǎo
我 很好! "I am fine."

yēhéhuá
耶和华 *Jehovah*

shàngdì
上帝 *God*

yēsū
耶稣 *Jesus*

jīdū
基督 *Christ*

tiānshǐ
天使 *angel*

sādàn
撒但 *Satan*

shèngjīng
圣经 *the Bible*

shǒuwàngtái
守望台 *the Watchtower*

jǐngxǐng
警醒 *the Awake*

wǒ
我 *I, me*

wǒmen
我们 *we, us*

nǐ
你 *you*

nǐmen
你们 *you (plural)*

tā
他 *he, him*

tā
她 *she, her*

tāmen
他们 *them*

tā
它 *it*

tāmen
它们 *them (objects)*

hǎo
好 *good, fine*

zázhì
杂志 *magazine*

shū
书 *book*



jièshào
介绍 *to introduce*

liǎng
两 *two of something, a pair*

běn
本 *grammar word (used for books)*

lái
来 *to come*

bàifǎng
拜访 *to pay a visit*

jīntiān
今天 *today*

míngtiān
明天 *tomorrow*

zuótiān
昨天 *yesterday*

New Presentation For Use in the Ministry

Homework: Memorize this presentation & practice it with a partner until you feel comfortable using it.
Try to use it in the ministry as much as possible.

Nín hǎo! Wǒ shì (*name*). Lái bàifǎng nín.
Jièshào liǎng běn zázhì. Qǐng nín kàn, hǎo ma?
Xièxiè. Zàijiàn.

*Hello! I am (name). I am here to visit you. Introducing two magazines. Please read (them), OK?
Thank you. Goodbye.*



NEW VERB: Shì 是: “to be”, “is”, “was”, “were”, “are”, “am”

Chinese speaking people use verbs VERY differently than English speakers do. English speakers conjugate, or change, most verbs depending on what they are talking about, but that is not the case in Mandarin Chinese. For example: If a person were to speak English like they speak Chinese, they might sound like this:

Yesterday I is a teacher. Today I is a student. Tomorrow I is a professor.

zuótiān wǒ shì lǎoshī jīntiān wǒ shì xuésheng míngtiān wǒ shì jiàoshòu
 昨天 我是 老师。今天 我是 学生。明天 我是 教授。

As part of your homework, circle the word “shì” (是) everytime you see it in this week’s Watchtower.

Grammar Chart: Using “shì” : to be, is, am, are, etc.

NOTE: If you need to, you may use some English nouns to fill this chart out, but *please try to use the new vocabulary you have learned today as much as possible* and fill in every blank of this chart for homework. After filling in the chart, think about the sentences you have created. What do they mean in English?

Subject	shì	Noun.
Yēhéhuá	shì	Shàngdì.
	shì	
	shì	
	shì	
	shì	
	shì	
	shì	
	shì	
	shì	

Ex: Jehovah is God. Yēhéhuá shì Shàngdì.

COMMON COURTESIES

(For use with the “Tell the story” method)



I'm sorry!

duìbùqǐ hěn bàoqiàn
对不起! or 很 抱歉!

Responses below: “It’s nothing”, “No problem”, “It’s no big deal,” etc.

méishì méiwèntí méiguānxi búyàojǐn
没事、没问题、没关系、不要紧

Thank you!

xièxie xièxie nǐ
谢谢! or 谢谢你!

Responses below: “No need to be polite”, “You’re welcome”, “No need for thanks.”

búkèqì búxiè búyòngxiè
不客气、不谢、不用谢

How are you?

nǐ hǎo ma
你好吗?

Responses below: “very good”, “pretty good”, “not bad”, “OK”, “alright”, and “so-so”

hěnhǎo tǐnghǎo búcuò hái kěyǐ kěyǐ háixíng ba
很好、挺好、不错、还可以、可以、还行吧

“Please” in Chinese is “Qǐng”. (See introduction on page 17 for example of usage.)

Cultural note:

Chinese people tend to use conservative responses like “búcuò” or “hái kěyǐ” more often than “hěnhǎo!”

The Four Tones: CHINESE PHONETIC DRILL

Do not underestimate the importance of tones! Do your best to learn how to pronounce the four tones correctly. As part of your homework, look up the meanings of the words below in a Chinese to English dictionary. Notice how the meanings of Chinese words *totally* change depending on what tone they are.



-1-

zāo záo zǎo zào

hāo háo hǎo hào

shāo sháo shǎo shào

fāng fáng fǎng fàng

bāi bái bǎi bài

dā dá dǎ dà



-2-



zhī zhí zhǐ zhì

zhōu zhóu zhǒu zhòu

dī dí dǐ dì

lēi léi lěi lèi

yōng yóng yǒng yòng

huān huán huǎn huàn

fēn fén fěn fèn

chēng chéng chěng chèng

fēng féng fěng fèng

shēng shéng shěng shèng

-3-



qiān qián qiǎn qiàn

qiāo qiáo qiǎo qiào

quān quán quǎn quàn

yē yé yě yè

gē gé gě gè

tū tú tǔ tù

chāng cháng chǎng chàng

chān chán chǎn chàn

shī shí shǐ shì

xiē xié xiě xiè

xībó lái yǔ shèng jīng
希伯来语 圣经
Hebrew Scriptures

xī là yǔ shèng jīng
希腊语 圣经
Greek Scriptures

创世纪 Chuàngshìjì Genesis	马太福音 Mǎtài fúyīn Matthew
出埃及记 Chū'āijì Exodus	马可福音 Mǎkě fúyīn Mark
利未记 Lìwèijì Leviticus	路加福音 Lùjiā fúyīn Luke
民数记 Mínhùjì Numbers	约翰福音 Yuēhàn fúyīn John
申命记 Shēnmìngjì Deuteronomy	使徒行传 Shǐtú xíngzhuàn Acts
约书亚记 Yuēshūyǎjì Joshua	罗马书 Luómǎshū Romans
士师记 Shìshījì Judges	哥林多前书 Gēlín duō qiánshū 1 Corinthians
路得记 Lùdéjì Ruth	哥林多後书 Gēlín duō hòushū 2 Corinthians
撒母耳记上 Sāmǔ'ěrjìshàng 1 Samuel	加拉太书 Jiālātài shū Galatians
撒母耳记下 Sāmǔ'ěrjìxià 2 Samuel	以弗所书 Yífúsuǒshū Ephesians
列王纪上 Lièwángjìshàng 1 Kings	腓立比书 Féilìbǐshū Philippians
列王纪下 Lièwángjìxià 2 Kings	歌罗西书 Gēluóxīshū Colossians
历代志上 Lìdàizhìshàng 1 Chronicles	帖撒罗尼迦前书 Tiēsālúóníjiāqiánshū 1 Thess.
历代志下 Lìdàizhìxià 2 Chronicles	帖撒罗尼迦後书 Tiēsālúóníjiāhòushū 2 Thess.
以斯拉记 Yísīlājì Ezra	提摩太前书 Tímótài qiánshū 1 Timothy
尼希米记 Níxīmìjì Nehemiah	提摩太后书 Tímótài hòushū 2 Timothy
以斯帖记 Yísītiējì Esther	提多书 Tíduōshū Titus
约伯记 Yuēbójì Job	腓利门书 Féilì ménshū Philemon
诗篇 Shīpiān Psalms	希伯来书 Xībó lái shū Hebrews
箴言 Zhēnyán Proverbs	雅各书 Yǎgèshū James
传道书 Chuándào shū Ecclesiastes	彼得前书 Bǐdé qiánshū 1 Peter
雅歌 Yǎgē Song of Solomon	彼得後书 Bǐdé hòushū 2 Peter
以赛亚书 Yísàiyǎshū Isaiah	约翰一书 Yuēhàn yīshū 1 John
耶利米书 Yēlìmǐshū Jeremiah	约翰二书 Yuēhàn èrshū 2 John
耶利米哀歌 Yēlìmǐ āigē Lamentations	约翰三书 Yuēhàn sānshū 3 John
以西结书 Yǐxījiéshū Ezekiel	犹大书 Yóudàshū Jude
但以理书 Dànyǐlǐshū Daniel	启示录 Qǐshìlù Revelation
何西阿书 Héxī'āshū Hosea	
约珥书 Yuē'ěrshū Joel	
阿摩司书 āmósīshū Amos	Examples:
俄巴底亚书 ébādīyǎshū Obadiah	Yǎgèshū dì sì zhāng dì liù jié James 4:6
约拿书 Yuēnǎshū Jonah	Shīpiān dì wǔ piān dì yī dào sān jié Psalm 5:1-3
弥迦书 Míjiāshū Micah	
那鸿书 Nàhóngshū Nahum	旧约 jiù yuē : old testament
哈巴谷书 Hābāgǔshū Habakkuk	新约 xīn yuē : new testament
西番雅书 Xīfānyǎshū Zephaniah	
哈该书 Hāgāishū Haggai	
撒迦利亚书 Sājīāliyǎshū Zechariah	
玛拉基书 Mǎlājīshū Malachi	<i>taken from Budapest Concise Chinese Course pg.7</i>

Note: Remember that the pronunciations of some of the Bible books in Mandarin seem similar at times to the English pronunciations, but they are still *Chinese*. Pay close attention to the differences if you want to be understood!

Pǔtōnghuà * dì 2 kè * Practical Vocabulary

As part of your homework, make flashcards & memorize new vocabulary words. Work with a partner if you can.



jùhuì 聚会 <i>meeting</i>	xīngqīyī lǐ bài yī 星期一 / 礼拜一 <i>Monday</i>
yāoqǐngdān 邀请单 <i>invitation</i>	xīngqī'èr lǐ bài èr 星期二 / 礼拜二 <i>Tuesday</i>
dǎogào 祷告 <i>prayer, to pray</i>	xīngqīsān lǐ bài sān 星期三 / 礼拜三 <i>Wednesday</i>
jīngwén 经文 <i>scripture</i>	xīngqīsì lǐ bài sì 星期四 / 礼拜四 <i>Thursday</i>
kànfǎ 看法 <i>opinion</i>	xīngqīwǔ lǐ bài wǔ 星期五 / 礼拜五 <i>Friday</i>
xīngqī 星期 <i>week</i>	xīngqīliù lǐ bài liù 星期六 / 礼拜六 <i>Saturday</i>
zhōumò 周末 <i>weekend</i>	xīngqīrì lǐ bài tiān 星期日 / 礼拜天 <i>Sunday</i>
zhōu rì 周日 <i>Sunday</i>	shàngwǔ 上午 <i>morning</i>
rì zi 日子 <i>day</i>	xiàwǔ 下午 <i>afternoon</i>
èrlíng yī yī nián 二零一一年 <i>the year 2011</i>	wǎnshang 晚上 <i>evening</i>

yīyuè	èryuè	sānyuè	siyuè	wǔyuè	liùyuè
一月: <i>January</i>	二月: <i>February</i>	三月: <i>March</i>	四月: <i>April</i>	五月: <i>May</i>	六月: <i>June</i>

Just add the numbers 1-12 for month names! It's easy. For homework, write out the names of the 12 months in pinyin & characters.

Some Useful Expressions...

xiàgè xīngqī èr wǎnshàng
下 个 星 期 二 晚 上 *next Tuesday night*

shànggè xīngqī tiān shàngwǔ
上 个 星 期 天 上 午 *last Sunday morning*

èrlíng yī yī nián sìyuè shíqī hào
二 零 一 一 年 四 月 十 七 号 *April 17th, 2011*

ràng wǒmen xiàng shàngdì dǎogào
让 我 们 向 上 帝 祷 告 。 *Let's pray to God.*



xīn jièshàocí
新 介 绍 词

New Presentation

nínhǎo wǒ shì nín guì xìng
您 好 ! * 我 是 (name)。您 贵 姓 ?

(Listen for their name. If you don't understand, then say: duìbùqǐ qǐng zài shuō yī biàn)
对 不 起 ! 请 再 说 一 遍 。)

hěn gāoxìng rènshi nín jièshào liǎng běn zázhì qǐng nín kànkàn hǎoma xièxiè zàijiàn
很 高 兴 认 识 您 ! 介 绍 两 本 杂 志 。 请 您 看 看 , 好 吗 ? 谢 谢 , 再 见 !

Hello! I am (name). What is your last name? (I'm sorry! Please say that again.)
I am glad to meet you! Introducing two magazines. Please read them, OK?
Thanks, goodbye.

nǐ hǎo ma

wǒ hěn hǎo xièxiè nǐ ne

* If the householder asks “你好吗?”, you could respond: “我很好、谢谢! 你呢?”

suǒyǐ nǐmen
Matthew 6:9: " 所以你们
yào zhèyàng dǎogào wǒmen
要 这 样 祷 告 : 我 们
zài tiānshàng de fùqīn yuàn nǐ
在 天 上 的 父 亲 , 愿 你
de míng zhāng xiǎn wéi
的 名 彰 显 为
shèng
圣 。 "

New Verb: 有 yǒu : “to have” & 没有 méiyǒu : “don’t have”

nǐ yǒu méiyǒu shèngjīng

你 有 没有 圣经 ? *Do you have a Bible? **

wǒ méiyǒu shèngjīng

我 没有 圣经 。 *I don't have a Bible. (Remember, 没有 “méiyǒu” means “don't have”)*

tā yǒu méiyǒu zázhì

他 有 没有 杂志? _____ *(Exercise: Fill in the translations)*

tā yǒu zázhì

他 有 杂志。 _____

tāmen yǒu zázhì

他们 有 杂志。 _____

nǐmen yǒu méiyǒu yāoqǐngdān

你们 有 没有 邀请 单? _____

About “yǒu méiyǒu” : Using this very common “verb not verb” grammar pattern makes a statement into a question. This grammar pattern presents the listener with a choice: “Have or not have?” (**yǒu méiyǒu?**), “Is or isn’t?” (**shì búshì?**), “Going or not going?” (**qù búqù?**), etc. If the answer to the question is “yes”, the listener will reply with the verb used in the question, “Have,” (**yǒu**), “Is,” (**shì**), or “Going” (**qù**). If the answer is “no”, then the listener will reply “Don’t have,” (**méiyǒu**), “Isn’t,” (**búshì**), or “Not going” (**búqù**).
Exercise: If you were asked, “**Nǐmen yǒu méiyǒu Shèngjīng?**” or, “**Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu Shǒuwàngtái zázhì?**”, how would you answer “yes” to those questions? How would you answer “no” ? Why?

***As part of your homework, circle every “yǒu” (有) that you see in this week’s Watchtower study.**

重要动词 : Some Important Verbs

NOTE: To negate any of these verbs, just add “bù” 不 before it.

For example: “Wǒ bùdǒng” means “I don’t understand.”

yào

要 to want

dǒng

懂 to understand

qù

去 to go

kàn

看 to see; to read

zhīdao

知道 to know

lái

来 to come

tīng

听 to hear or listen

bāngzhù

帮助 to help

gěi

给 to give

shuō

说 to say, speak

gàosù

告诉 to tell

tóngyì

同意 to agree

yòng

用 to use

rènwéi

认为 to think, feel

xiǎng

想 to think

Telling Time



diǎn
点 : o'clock

fēnzhōng
分钟 : minute(s)

bàn
半 : half

xiǎoshí zhōngtóu
小时 / 钟头 : hour (s)

shàngcì
上次 : last time

xiànzài
现在 : now

xià cì
下次 : next time

xiànzài jǐ diǎn
现在几点 ? *What time is it?*

shàngwǔ shí diǎn sānshí fēn shí diǎn bàn
10:30 am : 上午 十 点 三十 分 or 十 点 半

xiàwǔ sān diǎn líng wǔ fēn
3:05 pm : 下午 三 点 零 五 分

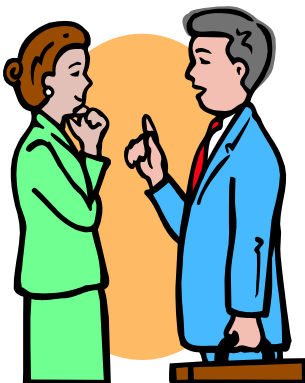
wǎnshàng qī diǎn sānshí fēn qī diǎn bàn
7:30 pm : 晚上 七 点 三十 分 or 七 点 半

Now try it for yourself! What are two ways to say "9:30 am" in Mandarin?

9:30 am: _____

Dialogue : duìhuà

Translate this dialogue into English as part of your homework.



qǐngwèn xiànzài jǐ diǎn
Kāng jiěmèi: 请问, 现在几点 ?

xiànzài bā diǎn bàn
Wáng dìxiōng: 现在 八点 半。

xièxie
Kāng jiěmèi: 谢谢! (*time passes...*)

qǐngwèn jùhuì jǐ diǎn kāishǐ
Kāng jiěmèi: 请问, 聚会几点 开始 ?

jùhuì jiǔ diǎn bàn kāishǐ
Wáng dìxiōng: 聚会 九点 半 开始。

ó xièxie nǐ
Kāng jiěmèi: 哦... 谢谢你 !

Fill in the Missing Chinese Words



Wǒ on xīngqī'èr _____ qù to pick up Mr. Wáng and his family for the _____ because tāmen méi _____ a car. Wǒ waited outside tāmen de* house for a few fēnzhōng and then knocked on tāmen de* door. Tāmen opened the door and shuō, “Wǒmen thought the _____ was on xīngqīsì wǎnshàng! Duì buqǐ! Duì buqǐ!” So, wǒ shuō, “Méi wèntí!” and gěi tāmen a _____ with all of the jùhuì times listed on it. Wǒ gàosù tāmen wǒ would be happy to pick them up for the _____ on xīngqītiān _____. Tāmen shuō, “Hǎo! Xièxie nǐ! Zàijiàn!” Wǒ shuō, “Búxiè! Xīngqītiān jiàn!” (*“Tāmen de” means “their”. Please see lesson 3 for more details about “de”.)

练习金字塔 *Practice Pyramids: Listen to the beautiful rhythm of Chinese!*



shì shàngdì
是 上帝 。

yēhéhuá shì shàngdì
耶和華 是 上帝 。

shèngjīng shuō yēhéhuá shì shàngdì
聖經 說 耶和華 是 上帝 。

dǎogào
禱告 。

xiàng shàngdì dǎogào
向 上帝 禱告 。

wǒmen yào xiàng shàngdì dǎogào
我們 要 向 上帝 禱告

HOMEWORK: Write a journal entry everyday using as many vocabulary words from lessons 1 & 2 as possible. Label each day's journal entry in Chinese (for ex: Monday, June 22, 2011 8 pm. Write it out in pinyin.) Don't forget to use all of the new verbs from this page in your entries if possible! Be creative. Memorize & use the new presentation.

Pǔtōnghuà *dì 3 kè* The Preaching Work: Chuándào Gōngzuò



mǎkěfúyīn dànshì hǎoxiāoxī bìxū xiān chuánbiàn wànguówànzú
 马可福音 13:10 : “ 但是 好消息 必须 先 传 便 万国万族 。”

shǒuwàngtái shàngdì de wángguó
 守望台 上帝 的 王国
Watchtower God's Kingdom

jǐngxǐng hǎoxiāoxī
 做醒 好消息
Awake good news

shūkān chuándào
 书刊 传道
literature to preach (VO)

cèzi zàilái
 册子 再来
brochure/booklet to return, to come back

dānzhāng jié
 单张 节
tract (measure word for scripture) see pages 56 & 57

bù běn
 不 本
not (makes most verbs negative) (measure word for most literature)

zhòngyào wèn wèntí
 重要 (问)问题
to be important (to ask) questions (VO)

lái kěyǐ
 来 可以
to come can, to be able to

qù xuéxí
 去 学习
to go to learn

dìzhǐ kòng
 地址 空
address free time, leisure

míngzi méikòng
 名字 没空
name no free time, busy

diànhuà hàomǎ xiānsheng
 电话 号码 先生
phone number Mister, Sir

gǎn xìngqu nǚshì
 感 兴趣 女士
to be interested (VO) Ms. (polite form of address for a married woman)*

shèngjīng xuésheng xiǎojiě
 圣经 学生 小姐
Bible student Miss (polite form of address for a younger woman)

*Note: Married Chinese women often prefer to be called by their maiden names & not their husband's last name.

TONE PRACTICE

The most difficult tone combinations for English speakers are highlighted in grey. Please try to practice these with the help of a native Mandarin Chinese speaking person, if possible. (Note: Not all Chinese people speak Mandarin as a first language. Many speak Chinese dialects that are very different from Mandarin- like Cantonese and Fujianese. So, some Chinese people speak Mandarin with an accent; some even have difficulty saying the 4 tones correctly.)

1/1	yēsū 耶稣 <i>Jesus</i>	jīdū 基督 <i>Christ</i>	shīpiān 诗篇 <i>Psalms</i>
1/2	jiātíng 家庭 <i>family</i>	zhēnyán 箴言 <i>Proverbs</i>	zhēnshí 真实 <i>real</i>
1/3	yīngyǔ 英语 <i>English</i>	fāngfǎ 方法 <i>method</i>	shēntǐ 身体 <i>body</i>
1/4	tiānqì 天气 <i>weather</i>	shēngbìng 生病 <i>sick</i>	shēngqì 生气 <i>angry</i>
2/1	fúyīn 福音 <i>Gospel</i>	qíjī 奇迹 <i>miracle</i>	yuányīn 原因 <i>reason</i>
2/2	nántí 难题 <i>problems</i>	xuéxí 学习 <i>study</i>	rénmín 人民 <i>citizens</i>
2/3	fánnǎo 烦恼 <i>worry</i>	móguǐ 魔鬼 <i>Devil</i>	wánměi 完美 <i>perfect</i>
2/4	chuándào 传道 <i>to preach</i>	rénlèi 人类 <i>mankind</i>	shújià 赎价 <i>ransom</i>
3/1	yǒngshēng 永生	niūyuē 纽约 <i>New York</i>	kěxī 可惜 <i>a pity</i>
3/2	sǐwáng 死亡 <i>death</i>	jiějué 解决 <i>to solve</i>	měiguó 美国 <i>America</i>
3/3	mǎkě 马可 <i>Mark</i>	xiǎngfǎ 想法 <i>viewpoint</i>	kěyǐ 可以 <i>can</i>
3/4	miǎnfèi 免费 <i>free</i>	ǒuxiàng 偶像 <i>idol</i>	dǎogào 祷告 <i>pray</i>
4/1	shèngjīng 圣经 <i>Bible</i>	chànggē 唱歌 <i>to sing</i>	lùjiā 路加 <i>Luke</i>
4/2	lèyuán 乐园 <i>paradise</i>	xiàwá 夏娃 <i>Eve</i>	rènhé 任何 <i>any</i>
4/3	zhèngfǔ 政府 <i>government</i>	jìnlǐ 浸礼 <i>baptism</i>	zuòzhě 作者 <i>author</i>
4/4	shìjiè 世界 <i>world</i>	yìjiàn 意见 <i>opinion</i>	bàoli 暴力 <i>violence</i>

Possessive 的 “de”

To say that something **belongs to** something or someone else in Chinese is very simple. It goes in the same place as ‘s’ in English does. See the examples below.

Grammar formula: **Noun de noun** - or - **pronoun de noun**

yēhéhuá de wángguó 耶和華 的 王國 : <i>Jehovah's Kingdom</i>	wǒ de shū 我 的 書 : <i>My book</i>
wáng xiānsheng de zázhì 王 先生 的 雜誌 : <i>Mr Wang's magazine</i>	tā de shǒuwàngtái 他 的 守望台 : <i>His Watchtower</i>
wáng nǚshì de shèngjīng 王 女士 的 聖經 : <i>Ms. Wang's Bible</i>	tiānshǐ de míngzi 天 使 的 名字 : <i>the angel's name</i>

Exercise: Translate the following five phrases into Chinese: “Miss Li’s phone number”, “Ms. Zhang’s address”, “Mr. Liang’s question”, “Mrs. Wang’s tract”, and “Ms. Yang’s brochure”

In cases of special relationship where possession is obvious, “de” is usually **dropped**. It is implied. Family relationships are one of these cases.

tā xiānsheng 她 先生 : <i>Her husband</i>	yēhéhuá jiànzhèngrén 耶和華 見 証 人 : <i>Jehovah's Witnesses</i>
---	--

*As part of your homework, circle every “de” that you see in this week’s Watchtower lesson.

Grammar Chart

Homework: Fill in the all of the blanks with the parts of speech listed. The first sentence is provided as an example.

Subject	verb	noun
Wǒmen	yǒu	Shèngjīng。

Example: We have Bible (s). Wǒmen yǒu Shèngjīng。

Some useful sentences to know for the ministry...

shàngdì de míngzi shì yēhéhuá 上 帝 的 名字 是 耶和華。 God's name is Jehovah.	wǒ gǎn xìngqu 我 感 兴 趣。 I am interested.
wǒ xiǎng xuéxí shèngjīng 我 想 学 习 圣 经。 I want to study the Bible.	nín yǒu méiyǒu yī běn shèngjīng ? 您 有 没 有 一 本 圣 经 ？
wǒ xiǎng dú yī jié jīngwén 我 想 读 一 节 经 文。 I'd like to read a scripture.	wǒ yǒu yīgè wèntí 我 有 一 个 问 题。 I have a question.
wǒ xiǎng hé nín fēnxiǎng yī běn cèzi 我 想 和 您 分 享 一 本 册 子。 I want to share a brochure with you.	wǒ xǐhuan 我 喜 欢。 I like this.

?????? Question Words ??????

For homework: Use flashcards to memorize all new vocabulary from this lesson including question words. Try to use as many of these new words as possible in your daily journal entries. Write your responses to the questions on the the following page in your journal.

shéi 谁 <i>who</i>	duō 多 <i>how, how many</i>	nǎ 哪 <i>which one</i>
shénme 什么 <i>what</i>	duōjiǔ 多久 <i>how long</i>	nǎxiē 哪些 <i>which ones</i>
shénme shíhòu 什么 时候 <i>when</i>	duōdà 多大 <i>how big; how old</i>	háishi 还是 <i>or</i>
zài nǎlǐ 在 哪里 <i>where</i>	duōshǎo 多少 <i>how many, how much (for any #)</i>	
wèishénme 为 什么 <i>why</i>	jǐ 几 <i>how many, how much (only used with small #s)</i>	
gànma 干 吗 <i>what for</i>	ba 吧 <i>question particle (asking for agreement)</i>	
zěnmē 怎 么 <i>how, what</i>	ma 吗 <i>question particle (makes statement into a question)</i>	
zěnmeyàng 怎 么 样 <i>how is it</i>	ne 呢 <i>question particle (for example: 你呢? means "And you?")</i>	nǐ ne 你呢?
héshí 何 时 <i>when</i>	rúhé 如 何 <i>how/which/where/why (usually just used in books)</i>	

Some examples of usage....

Nǐmen shì shéi? *Who are you?*

Zhè shì shénme? *What is this?*

Tā shénme shíhòu lái? *When is he coming?*

Tāmen zài nǎr? *Where are they?*

Nǐ wèishénme chuándào? *Why do you preach?*

Nǐ gànma chuándào? *What do you preach for? (colloquial)*

Wǒmen zěnmē zuò hǎorén? *How can we be good people?*

Nǐ zuìjìn zěnmeyàng? *How are you?*

Nǎ běn Shèngjīng shì nǐ de? *Which Bible is yours?*

Nǎ xiē Shèngjīng shì nǐ de? *Which Bibles are yours?*

Zhèige duōshǎo qián? *How much does this cost?*

Nǐ yǒu jǐge hái? *How many kids do you have?*

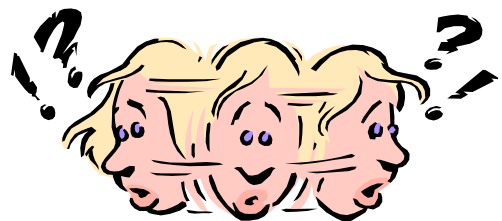
Nǐ yǒu hái ma? *Do you have kids?*

Nǐ yǒu hái ba? *You have kids, don't you?*

Wǒ yǒu hái, nǐ ne? *I have kids, what about you?*

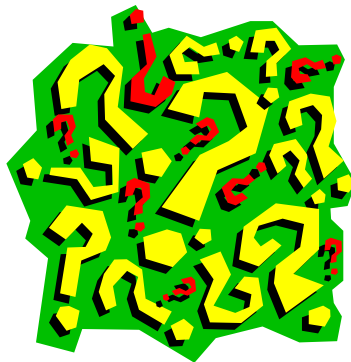
Tā duōdà? *How old is he/she?*

Nǐ yǒu sānyuèfèn de Shǒuwàngtái háishi sìyuèfèn de Shǒuwàngtái? *Do you have the April WT or the April?*



Biographical Database: *Practice using question words*

Get up, walk around the room, greet your classmates in Mandarin, and then ask them these questions (*please, use ONLY Mandarin!!!*). Answer the questions in Mandarin. Write down your classmate's answers using pinyin in your notebook. Then, switch roles. Try to talk with as many classmates as possible in the allotted time. This exercise will give you many opportunities to practice *speaking, understanding, and writing* Mandarin.



nǐ de míngzi shì shénme

1. Q: 你的名字是 什么? (What is your name?)

wǒ de míngzi shì

A: 我的名字是 _____. (My name is _____.)

nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshǎo

2. Q: 你的电话号码是 多少? (What is your phone number?)

wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì

A: 我的电话号码是 () - ____ - _____. (My phone number is:...)

nǐ wèishénme xuéxí pǔtōnghuà

3. Q: 你 为什么 学习 普通话? (Why are you learning Mandarin?)

wǒ xué pǔtōnghuà yīnwéi

A: (我学普通话 因为 ...) (I am learning Mandarin because...)

nǐ zhù zài nǎlǐ

4. Q: 你住在 哪里? (Where do you live?)

wǒ zhù zài

A: 我住在 (state). (I live in _____.)

Notice that to in order to formulate an answer to a question in Chinese, quite often one can simply insert the answer to the question in the same place where the question word is in the question. See the above examples- the question words are underlined. Question #3 is an exception.



“Time” and Chinese Grammar

Time + subject + verb + object.

Subject + time + verb + object.



jīntiān míngtiān zuótiān wǎnshàng shídiǎn chūntiān tiāntiān
“今天”，“明天”，“昨天”，“晚上 十点”，“春天”，“天天”

All of these words are “time marker” words. English and Chinese are opposite in where they put “time” words in a sentence. In English we often put these words at the end of a sentence: “I am going to China **tomorrow**.” But, in Chinese the time goes in the beginning of a sentence: “I **tomorrow** am going to China.” Another correct way to say it is: “**Tomorrow** I am going to China.”

Always remember, when writing Chinese sentences or speaking Chinese, the time words go **before the main verb**. This is because Chinese verbs aren’t conjugated like verbs in English are, so it is important to clearly state the time early in the sentence.

READING AND PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE

(excerpt : “ Learning From the Great Teacher” book: lesson 41, page 214, audio time marker 4:05)

First, try reading this story out loud. Next, listen to the Mandarin Chinese audio files provided by the Branch and read along out loud simultaneously. Try to keep up with the pace of the reader. Use your finger to point at each word as you read it. Doing this will help your brain learn better. Try not to focus on what the words mean, rather on what they sound like and the flow of the tones. Listen to how the tones sound in relation to one another. Try your best to imitate the sounds and flow of Mandarin Chinese. It will take time for your muscles to become accustomed to making Chinese sounds, so be patient and read out loud in Chinese daily.

Wǒmen kěyǐ zài nǎlǐ xuédào Shàngdì de zhīshì, shǐ wǒmen néng gēn biérén jiǎng ne? —— Zài jiā lǐ dú Shèngjīng shì yīgè fāngfǎ. Búguò, wǒmen gēn Shàngdì de zimín jùjǐ qǐlái yándú shèngjīng, xué de zhīshì huì gèngduō. Nàme, wǒmen zěnme zhīdào, nǎxiē rén cái shì Shàngdì de zimín ne? —— Wǒmen kěyǐ kànkàn jǐ jiàn shì. Tāmen jùhuì shí zuò xiē shénme ne? Tāmen shì búshì zhēn de jiāo rén rènshi Shèngjīng de zhēnlǐ ne? Tāmen yǒu méiyǒu fānkāi Shèngjīng, rènzhēn de yuèdú hé xuéxí ne? Zhèyàng, wǒmen cáinéng xuédào guānyú Shàngdì de zhīshì, duì búduì? —— Zài Jīdūtú de jùhuì lǐ, wǒmen xuéxí de yīnggāi shì Shàngdì de huàyǔ, duì búduì? —— Búguò, rúguǒ yǒurén shuō, nǐ bù xūyào ànzhào Shèngjīng de zhǐyǐn qù shēnghuó, nà yòu zěnyàng ne? Nǐ juéde zhèyàng shuō de rén shì búshì Shàngdì de zimín ne?

IMPORTANT VERB: TO GO 去 qù

As part of your homework: Using a dictionary, translate the dialogue below into English on a separate piece of paper. As you study your Chinese Watchtower this week, circle the word “qù” each time you see it.

lǐ xiǎojiě wǒ míngtiān qù jīdūtú jùhuì nǐ ne
李小姐：我 明天 去 基督徒 聚会。你呢？

wángtàitai wǒ bú qù wǒ xiǎng qù dànshì wǒ búshì jīdūtú
王太太：我 不去。我 想 去、但是 我 不是 基督徒。

lǐ xiǎojiě suǒyǒu rén dōu kěyǐ qù jùhuì
李小姐：所 有 人 都 可 以 去 聚会！

wáng tàitai hěnhǎo wǒ kěyǐ péi nǐ qù ma
王太太：很 好！我 可 以 陪 你 去 吗？

Note: 太太 tàitai is another way to say: “Mrs.” This title is used along with the husband’s last name.

Xīn jièshàocí: New Presentation

Do your best to memorize this presentation and scripture. Practice it with a partner until you feel comfortable with it.

nín hǎo wǒ shì míngzi lái bài fǎng nín
您 好！我 是 (名字)。来 拜 访 您。

qǐng nín kàn zhè jié jīngwén。(Read Shìpiān 37:29 to the householder:)
请 您 看 这 节 经 文。

Please read this scripture.

yìrén bì dézháo dàdì yǒngyuǎn zài dìshàng ānjū
“义 人 必 得 著 大 地、永 远 在 地 上 安 居。”

jièshào liǎng běn zázhì qǐng nín kàn yī kàn
介 绍 两 本 杂 志。请 您 看 一 看。

(At this point, hand them a set of magazines.)

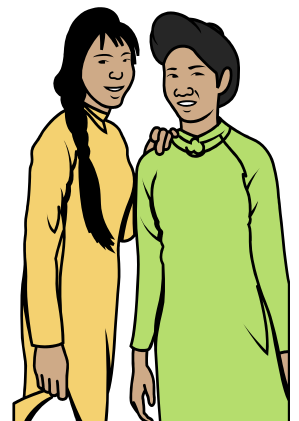
wǒ xiǎng xiàgèxīngqī zàilái bài fǎng nín hǎoma
我 想 下 个 星 期 再 来 拜 访 您、好 吗？

I would like to come back next week, is that ok?

hǎo bùhǎo

(好: ok / 不好: not ok)

(Householder says: OK / Not OK)



Dì 4 kè: Kingdom Hall: Wángguó Jùhuìsuǒ

shǒuwàngtái yánjiū

守望台 研究 Watchtower study

jīdūtú jùhuì

基督徒 聚会 Christian meeting

huìzhòng

会众 congregation

gēshū

歌书 song book

chàngē

唱歌 to sing a song (VO)

dǎogào

祷告 to pray; prayer

juānkuǎn

捐款 contribution (VO)

zài hòumiàn

在 后面 in the back

zài qiánmiàn

在 前面 in the front

xǐshǒujiān

洗手间 bathroom

lǎngdú

朗读 to read aloud

zhè nà

这 / 那 this / that

chuándàojuán

传道人 publisher

zhǎnglǎo

长老 elder

dìxiōng

弟兄 Brother

jiěmèi

姐妹 Sister

yīnwéi

因为 because

suǒyǐ

所以 therefore

yìsi

意思 meaning

bù míngbai

(不) 明白 (don't) understand

duìbùqǐ

对不起 I'm sorry

jǔshǒu

举手 raise (your) hand (VO)

pínglùn

评论 to comment; a comment

yǎnjiǎng

演讲 a talk (at the meeting)



Some useful expressions:

bùhǎoyìsi

不好意思 *I'm sorry; embarrassed*

nǐ zhīdao ma

你知道吗? *Do you know?*

wǒ zhīdao

我知道。 *I know.*

zhè shì shénme yìsi

这是什麼意思? *What does this mean?*

nǐ míngbai ma

你明白吗? *Do you understand?*

wǒ bù zhīdao

我不知道。 *I don't know.*

rúguǒ nǐ xǐhuan zuòchū yīdiǎn juānxiàn wǒmen hěn lèyì jiēshòu

如果你 喜欢 作出 一点 捐献、我们 很 乐意 接受。

If you would like to make a small donation, we would happily accept it.

AUXILIARY VERBS “to be able” Kěyǐ Huì & Néng

These verbs are called auxiliary verbs, or **helping verbs**, because they are not used alone. They are used along with a **main verb**. For example: Would it sound right to say: “I am able to Bible.” No! But, when a main verb is added, the sentence sounds great: “I am able to read the Bible.”

As part of your homework: Use these 3 verbs along with other vocabulary from this lesson in your daily journal entries. Describe some things you know how to do, like dance, sing, draw, speak Spanish, etc.

kěyǐ

* 可以 (verb) “to be able to”, “can”, “may”

“**Kěyǐ**” is the most commonly used way to say “**can**” or “**able to**” in Mandarin. In the “What Does God Require of Us?” brochure, for example, it says: “Nǐ kěyǐ zěnyàng zhīdào Shàngdì yǒu shénme yāoqiú?” This means, “How can you know what requirements God has?” “**Kěyǐ**” can also have the connotation of “**allowed to**”, or “**permitted to**”. For example, “Wǒ kěyǐ qù Xiǎohóng de jiā ma?” means “May I go to Xiǎohóng’s house?”. A parent may answer: “kěyǐ”, “yes, you may” or “bù kěyǐ”, “no, you may not”.

huì

* 会 (verb) “to be able to”

“**Huì**” has the connotation of “**mentally able to**” or “**to know how to do**”. For example, “Wǒ huì shuō Pǔtōnghuà,” means “I can speak Mandarin.” Or, “Wǒ huì xiě zhōngwén,” means “I can write Chinese.” Writing or speaking a language takes mental ability, so we use the verb “huì” to express that thought.



néng

* 能 (verb) “to be able to”

“**Néng**” has the connotation of being **physically able to** do an activity. For example, a person with an injury may say, “Wǒ bùnéng pǎobù.” This means: “I can’t run.” Or, someone that just recovered from an injury may say, “Wǒ néng tiàowǔ.” which means, “I can dance.” (This statement has the connotation of being physically able to dance. We could also say, “Wǒ huì tiàowǔ.” This means, “I know how to dance.”)

GRAMMAR CHARTS

Completely fill out these charts using vocabulary from this lesson and past lessons. **Please don't use a dictionary!**

How to say someone or something is allowed to do something

Subject	kěyǐ	verb	object.
Wǒ	kěyǐ	chàng	gē.
	kěyǐ		
	kěyǐ		
	kěyǐ		
	kěyǐ		
	kěyǐ		

Ex. Wǒ kěyǐ chànggē. I am allowed to sing.

How to Say Someone or Something Knows How to Do Something

Subject	huì	verb	object.
Wǒ	huì	chàng	gē.
	huì		
	huì		
	huì		
	huì		
	huì		

Ex. Wǒ huì chànggē. I know how to sing.

How to Say Someone or Something is Physically Able to Do Something

Subject	néng	verb	object
Wǒ	néng	chàng	gē.
	néng		
	néng		
	néng		
	néng		
	néng		

Ex. Wǒ néng chànggē. I am able to sing.

The Unique Makeup of Chinese Words

Chinese is a very logical language composed of many two character compound words. Examples of compound words in English are: basketball, doorknob, lifelike, and grandmother. These words are made up of two or more other words and often the combination is descriptive; it makes sense. Because Chinese has so many compound words, it makes learning new vocabulary easier because often “big” words are really just several little words put together. They often make sense! For example: The word Shèngjīng (Bible) is a compound word. ‘Shèng’ means “holy” and ‘jīng’ means “scriptures.” So, as you continue learning Chinese on your own, look up the meanings of components of Chinese words in your dictionary. You will be amazed at how logical they often are. Also, they are easier to remember when the component parts are understandable. For example:

“xīn” : heart....Notice how many Chinese words include the word “heart”. These words all relate in some way to the word heart, either in the sense of involving feelings, or the center of something.

xīnzàng 心脏 heart (physical)	nèixīn 内心 inner heart	àixīn 爱心 love (noun)
zhōngxīn 忠心 faithful	xìnxīn 信心 faith	fàngxīn 放心 to calm down
cūxīn 粗心 careless	xiǎoxīn 小心 to be careful	dānxīn 担心 to worry
huīxīn 灰心 to be discouraged	ǐxīn 恶心 to be nauseated	fēnxīn 分心 to be distracted
nàixīn 耐心 patience	kāixīn 开心 to feel happy	rèxīn 热心 zealous (literally: hot heart)
héxīn 核心 nucleus, core	zhōngxīn 中心 center	shāngxīn 伤心 to grieve (injured heart)

A “zi” at the end of a word often means that word is a noun.

érzi 儿子 son	làngzǐ 浪子 prodigal son	dúshēngzǐ 独生子 Only Begotten Son
àizǐ 爱子 beloved son	háizi 孩子 child	tóushēngzǐ 头生子 firstborn male
bízi 鼻子 nose	bózi 脖子 neck	dùzǐ 肚子 stomach, belly
zhuōzi 桌子 table	yǐzi 椅子 chair	chāzi 叉子 fork
sháozi 勺子 spoon	bēizi 杯子 cup, glass	fángzi 房子 house
bāozi 包子 steamed buns	guǒzi 果子 fruit	jiǎozi 饺子 dumplings; pot-stickers

The Differences Between 不 and 没



Negation

bù

不 : **not, not want to**

méi

没 : **not (only used with 有 ; but “有” is often dropped. i.e. 没问题)**

méiyǒu

没有 : **haven't (negation of verb in the past; similar to English usage of “haven't”)**

Examples

1. 我不看！ **I will not look!** (*Using “bù” like this indicates a firm refusal to look.*)
2. 我不能看。 **I can't see.** (*This means the person is physically unable to see.*)
3. 我没有看。 **I haven't seen (it).** (*When “méi” is used in front of a verb, it means the verb hasn't happened.*)
4. 我没有杂志。 **I don't have magazines.** (*“Méi” means “don't have” when used in front of a noun.*)
5. 我没有看过这本书。 **I haven't read this book.**

Good News/Bad News hǎoxiāoxī huàixiāoxī
好消息 / 坏消息 (**Translate into Chinese.**)

The good news is, I went out in service.

The bad news is, I did not have any literature.

The good news is, my partner had extra* literature.

The bad news is, the householder couldn't read Chinese.

The good news is, I had my “Good news for all Nations” booklet.

The bad news is, it doesn't have Cambodian**.

The good news is, the little girl said, “My mommy can't speak English, but I can!”

(*extra: duōyúde; **Cambodian: Gāomiányǔ)

GRAMMAR CHARTS

Completely fill out these charts *using vocabulary from this lesson and past lessons.*

How to Say that the Subject Doesn't Have a Certain Thing

Subject	méiyǒu	noun.
Chuándàoyuán	méiyǒu	Shǒuwàngtái.
	méiyǒu	
	méiyǒu	
	méiyǒu	
	méiyǒu	

Ex. Chuándàoyuán méiyǒu Shǒuwàngtái. The publisher doesn't have a Watchtower.

How to Say that the Subject Didn't Do Something

Subject	méiyǒu	verb	object.
Chuándàoyuán	méiyǒu	jǔ	shǒu.
	méiyǒu		
	méiyǒu		
	méiyǒu		
	méiyǒu		

Ex. Chuándàoyuán méiyǒu jǔ shǒu. The publisher didn't raise (his/her) hand.

How to Say that the Subject Refuses to Do a Certain Thing

Subject	bù	verb	object.
Xuéshēng	bù	tīng	quànmiǎn.
	bù		
	bù		
	bù		
	bù		

Ex. Xuéshēng bù tīng quànmiǎn. The students won't listen to counsel.

形容词 : **Practice with Simple Descriptive Sentences**

Grammar Formula: Subject + **hěn / fēicháng / bù / bú tài** + adjective

rè 热 hot (temperature)	piàoliang 漂亮 pretty	nán 难 difficult	shànliáng 善良 nice
lěng 冷 cold (temperature)	shuài 帅 handsome	róngyì 容易 easy	máng 忙 busy
gāoxìng 高兴 happy	kuài 快 fast	cōngmíng 聪明 smart	zhòng 重 heavy
nánguò 难过 sad	màn 慢 slow	bèn 笨 stupid	qīng 轻 light

- | | |
|---|---|
| nǐ hěn shànliáng
1. 你 很 善良 。 <i>You are very nice.</i> | jīntiān bú tài rè
2. 今天 不 太 热 。 <i>It's not too hot today.</i> |
| lín jiěmèi fēicháng cōngmíng
3. 林 姐妹 非常 聪明 。 <i>Sister Lin is extremely smart.</i> | wǒ bù máng
4. 我 不 忙 。 <i>I am not busy.</i> |

NOTE: When describing something, you don't have to use a modifier for the adjective.
You could use this easy formula: Subject + adjective. (*see note below)

For example: “我 忙 。” I am busy. or “她 高兴 。” She is happy.

IMPORTANT: When describing something, an English speaking person often uses the words “is”, “are”, or “be”. (“He is very smart.” or “It is quite hot today.”) But, in Chinese, the state “to be” is implied in *all adjectives*. That’s why some Chinese dictionaries or textbooks call adjectives “stative verbs”.

For example, the word “máng” doesn’t just mean “busy”. It means “to be busy” or “is busy”. So, Chinese people usually don’t use the verb “shì” with adjectives for this reason. It is not necessary, since the verb “to be” is already built into Chinese adjectives. They only use “shì” with an adjective if they want to give strong emphasis to the adjective, or if they are expressing a complex idea.

Remember how we learned to respond to the greeting “**Nǐ hǎo**”. We learned to say: “**Wǒ hěn hǎo**,” and not “**Wǒ shì hǎo**”.

*Note: Chinese people generally don’t say “**Wǒ hǎo**,” because that doesn’t flow as well as “**Wǒ hěn hǎo**.” Sometimes they use “**hěn**” to make a sentence have better rhythm.

But, please don’t forget: when you are talking about two NOUNS or a PRONOUN and a NOUN, you still need to use the verb “to be”: “shì”. (Noun – shì – noun.)

For example: “Yēhéhuá shì Shàngdì.” Jehovah is God.

“Tā shì Yēhéhuá Jiànzhèngrén.” She is one of Jehovah’s Witnesses

CHINESE PHONETIC DRILL

Keep practicing tones out loud over and over again! If possible, ask a native Mandarin speaking person to correct your tones.



-1-



zhāng zháng zhǎng zhàng

zhōng zhóng zhǒng zhòng

zhēng zhéng zhěng zhèng

cēng céng cěng cèng

diū diú diǔ diù

zān zán zǎn zàn

zāng záng zǎng zàng



-2-

xuān xuán xuǎn xuàn

shūan shúan shǔan shuàn

juān juán juǎn juàn

zhuān zhuán zhuǎn zhuàn

zhuāng zhuáng zhuǎng zhuàng

xū xú xǔ xù

shū shú shǔ shù

-3-

lū lú lǔ lù

lū lú lǔ lù

nuō nuó nuǒ nuò

rōu róu rǒu ròu

cāo cáo cǎo cào

duī duí duǐ duì

sūn sún sǔn sùn



Homework: Memorize this week's vocabulary; **use as much new vocabulary as possible while writing journal entries!** Practice new vocabulary with a partner using flashcards. Completely fill out all of this week's grammar charts. Practice tones with a Chinese person if possible. (Many Chinese people don't know pinyin well, so use the chart with Chinese characters from last week's lesson to practice tones with a Chinese person.) Memorize presentation & use in ministry.

Xīn jièshàocí: Building on Our New Presentation



nínhǎo lái bàifǎng nín qǐng nín kàn zhè jié jīngwén
您 好！来 拜访 您。请 您 看 这 节 经 文 。

Hello! I am here to visit you. Please look at this scripture (publisher reads to householder):

诗篇 37:29: " 义人 必 得 著 大 地、永 远 在 地 上 安 居。 "

wǒ xiǎng xiàgèxīngqī zàilái bàifǎng nín hǎoma hǎo bùhǎo
我 想 下 个 星 期 再 来 拜 访 您，好 吗？ (answer: 好 or 不好)

I would like to come back next week, is that ok?

nín shénme shíhòu yǒu kòng
您 什 么 时 候 有 空？ (answer: a day of the week, time of day)

When do you have free time?

hǎo xià gè jiàn
好，下 个 (time they said to come back) 见！

Ok, see you (at time they specified)!

For reference in the ministry:

biànmíng shèngjīng de zhēnlǐ shū

辨 明 圣 经 的 真 理 书：The Bible Teach book

zhǎodào zhēnlǐ dānzhāng

找 到 真 理 单 张：the Truth tract

yǐfúsuǒshū 5:33 nǐmen gèrén dōu gāi ài qīzi hǎoxiàng ài zìjǐ qīzi yě gāi shēnshēn zūnjìng zhàngfu
以弗所书 5:33 你们个人 都该爱妻子, 好像爱自己; 妻子也该深深尊敬丈夫。

Pǔtōnghuà dì 5 kè: Jiāting / Guānxi * FAMILY & RELATIONSHIPS

bàba
爸爸 father

jiārén
家人 family members

qīnmì
亲密 close

māma
妈妈 mother



jiāting
家庭 family

xiānsheng
先生 Mr.; husband

érzi
儿子 son

háizi
孩子 child, children

tàitai
太太 Mrs.; wife

nǚ'ér
女儿 daughter

zhàngfu
丈夫 husband

érnǚ
儿女 children

qīzi
妻子 wife



yéye
爷爷 paternal grandfather

pèi'ǒu
配偶 spouse

nǎinai
奶奶 paternal grandmother

hūnyīn
婚姻 marriage

wàigōng
外公 maternal grandfather

jiéhūn
结婚 to get married

ài
爱 to love

wàipó
外婆 maternal grandmother

líhūn
离婚 divorce

àixīn
爱心 love (noun)

sūnzi
孙子 grandson



guānxīn
关心 to care about

sūnnǚ
孙女 granddaughter

zūnzhòng
尊重 to respect

sūnzǐsūnnǚ
孙子孙女 grandchildren

kuānshù
宽恕 to forgive

shūshu
叔叔 uncle

gōutōng
沟通 communication

āyí
阿姨 aunt

*See family tree chart in appendix for more detailed information.

gōutōng
沟通 to communicate

qīnqī
亲戚 relatives

guānxi
关系 relationship

BIOGRAPHICAL DATABASE: PRACTICE USING COMMON QUESTION WORDS

QUESTIONS

- nǐhǎo nǐ zěnmeyàng
1. 你好! 你 怎么样 ?
- nǐ de huìzhòng yǒu duōshǎo chuándàojuán
2. 你的 会众 有 多少 传道人 ?
- nǐ yǒu hái zi ma
3. 你 有 孩子 吗?
- nǐ zhùzài měiguó duō jiǔ le
4. 你 住在 美国 多 久了?

As part of your homework:
Memorize these 4 questions.

NEW VOCABULARY :

- hěnhǎo
1. 很好 : **very good**
- háikěyǐ
2. 还可以 : **good**
- búcuò
3. 不错 : **good**
- tǐnghǎo
4. 挺好 : **quite good**
- zhùzài
5. 住在 : **to live in, at**
- měiguó
6. 美国 : **America**
- le
7. 了 : **denotes completed action**
- gāng
8. 刚 : **just (something just happened)**

ANSWERS

- hěnhǎo hái kěyǐ tǐnghǎo búcuò
1. 很好 / 还可以 / 挺好 / 不错
- wǒ de huìzhòng yǒu gè chuándàojuán
2. 我的 会众 有 #个 传道人 。
- yǒu wǒ yǒu gè hái zi wǒ méiyǒu hái zi
3. 有 , 我 有 #个 孩子。 or 我 没有 孩子
- wǒ zhùzài měiguó nián
4. 我 住在 美国 # 年。 or

wǒ gāng lái měiguó
我 刚 来 美国 。



At our next Chinese convention or assembly, why not make it a point to get to know some of our Chinese brothers and sisters from other congregations using these questions?

Xíngróngcí * Adjectives

For homework, make flashcards of *all* new vocabulary. You can be creative and use pictures to express some or all of the adjectives below on your flashcards. Practice with a partner if possible! This will make your load feel lighter. Use as many new vocabulary words & grammar patterns in your daily journal entries as possible.



tóng bù tóng

同 / 不同 *the same/different*

dà

大 *big*

xiǎo

小 *small*

tèbié

特别 *special*

pǔtōng

普通 *common*

zhēn

真 *true/real*

jiǎ

假 *false*

zhèngcháng

正常 *normal*

qíguài

奇怪 *strange*

ǎi

矮 *short (stature)*

gāo

高 *tall / high*

píng

平 *flat*

yuán

圆 *round*

yuǎn

远 *far*

jìn

近 *close*

lǎo

老 *old*

niánqīng

年青 *young*

jiǎndān

简单 *simple*

fùzá

复杂 *complex*

tián

甜 *sweet (tasting)*

xián

咸 *salty*

là

辣 *hot (spicy)*

kǔ

苦 *bitter*

ruǎn

软 *soft*

yìng

硬 *hard*

è

饿 *hungry*

kǒukě

口渴 *thirsty*

bǎo

饱 *full, satisfied*

guì

贵 *expensive*

piányi

便宜 *inexpensive*

shǎo

少 *few*

duō

多 *many*

lèi

累 *tired*

jiéjìng

洁净 *clean*

zāng

脏 *dirty*

duǎn

短 *short (length)*

cháng

长 *long*

pàng

胖 *fat*

shòu

瘦 *thin*

qiáng

强 *strong*

ruǎnrào

软弱 *weak*

rènzhēn

认真 *diligent*

lǎnduò

懒惰 *lazy*

yǒnggǎn

勇敢 *brave*

hàixiū

害羞 *shy*

NOTE Almost any phrase with a verb and object can become an adjective if you add “de” to it and put it in front of the noun you are describing. For example: “ài Shàngdì de rén” = “God-loving person” or “ài shìjiè de rén” = “a person who loves the world”

Choose some of the above adjectives to complete this statement:

What kind of fruit do you like to eat? I like to eat _____ fruit.
Nǐ xǐhuān chī zěnmeyàng de guǒzi? Wǒ xǐhuān chī (adjective) de guǒzi.





Hěn and Shì

1. hěn 很 (adverb) “very”.

Used with adjectives in describing people, things, or objects.

Common mistake: “wǒ hěn gāo de.”

Correct ways to use “hěn”:

wǒ hěn gāo
我 很 高。 *I am very tall.*

tā hěn lǎo
他 很 老。 *He is very old.*

bàba hěn shòu
爸 爸 很 瘦。 *Dad is very thin.*

māma hěn ǎi
妈 妈 很 矮。 *Mom is very short.*

2. shì 是 (verb) “to be”.

Used with concrete conditions or circumstances.

Common mistake: “Tā shì gāo.”

Correct ways to use “shì”:

tā shì lǎoshī
他 是 老 师。 *He is a teacher.*

tā shì wǒ nǎinai
她 是 我 奶 奶。 *She is my grandmother.*

nǐmen shì yēhéhuá jiànzhèngrén
你 们 是 耶 和 华 见 证 人。 *You are Jehovah’s Witnesses.*

3. shì...de 是...的 Used to connect an adjective with a noun; used in *more complex sentences* than the descriptions in example #1.

Common mistake: Yēhéhuá dúyī de zhēnshén.

Correct ways to use “shì” in a more complex sentence:

yēsū shì yīgè guānxīn biérén de rén
耶 稣 是 一 个 关 心 别 人 的 人。 *Jesus was a person who cared for other people.*

yēhéhuá shì dú yī de zhēnshén
耶 和 华 是 “独 一 的 真 神”。 *Jehovah is “the only true God”. (John 17:3)*

GRAMMAR CHARTS

Practice Using “hěn” to Describe the Subject

Subject	hěn	adjective.
Nǐ māmā	hěn	niánqīng.
	hěn	
	hěn	
	hěn	
	hěn	

Ex. Your mother is very young. Nǐ māmā hěn niánqīng.

How to Say the Subject is Something Concrete

Subject	shì	noun.
Yēhéhuá	shì	Shàngdì.
	shì	
	shì	
	shì	
	shì	

Ex. Jehovah is God. Yēhéhuá shì Shàngdì.

How to use “shì” in a descriptive sentence using the “shì...de” complex

Subject	shì	# and MW	adjective	de	noun.
Tā	shì	ge	hàixiū	de	háizi.
	shì			de	
	shì			de	
	shì			de	
	shì			de	

Ex. He is a shy child. Tā shì ge hàixiū de háizi.

DRAMATIC ACTING

Translate the below sentences into English for as part of your homework.

1. xiàwá zhāixià guǒzi lái chī le
1. 夏娃 摘 下 果 子 来 吃 了。 (^{chuàngshìjì} 创世纪 3:8)
2. gāiyīn shā le yàbó
2. 该隐 杀 了 亚伯。
3. nuòyǎ jiànzhào le fāngzhōu
3. 诺亚 建 造 了 方 舟 。
4. yuēbó shēngbìng le
4. 约伯 生 病 了。
5. nǚrén de miáoyì bì dǎsuì sādàn de tóu
5. 女 人 的 苗 裔 必 打 碎 撒 但 的 头。 (^{chuàngshìjì} 创世纪 3:15)
6. sādàn bì yǎoshāng yēsū de jiǎogēn
6. 撒 但 必 咬 伤 耶稣 的 脚 跟。 (^{chuàngshìjì} 创世纪 3:15)
7. sādàn bèi shuāi zài dìshàng tā de tiānshǐ yě gēn tā yìqǐ bèi shuāi xiàqu
7. 撒 但 被 摔 在 地 上 , 他 的 天 使 也 跟 他 一 起 被 摔 下 去。
(^{qǐshìlù} 启示录 12:9)

Important Cultural Notes:

Regarding Bible names & accounts, please keep in mind that most Chinese people have never heard of Moses, Noah, Abraham, the apostle Paul, etc. Perhaps they have heard certain Bible terms or phrases such as “the garden of Eden”, but they may have no idea what those terms or phrases are referring to. Some Chinese people have never heard of the Bible. So, when preaching to Chinese people don't take for granted that they know anything about the Bible. Instead, be sure to ask tactful questions like: Have you ever heard of the Bible before? As you ask that question, you could open to the title page of the Bible and point to the characters for Bible: 圣经. For other Chinese people, the word “Bible” can be a big turn-off because they may be Buddhists or atheists. So, it may be a good idea to **avoid referring to the Bible in the first 30 seconds** of your presentation. Also, try to avoid featuring articles about negative subjects like **death**. Instead, feature articles from the magazines about things like **family, money, or health**. These subjects are very interesting to many Chinese people.

Presentation: A Return Visit

zuò xùfǎng 做 续访

As part of your homework, memorize this presentation, practice it with a partner, and then do your best to use it in the ministry as many times as you can.

nǐhǎo wǒ shì
你好！我是 (name)。
Hello! I am (name).

shàngcì wǒ gěi le nǐ zhèxiē zázhi
上次我给了你这些杂志。
Last time I gave you these magazines.

(Show them the magazines that you gave them last time.)

wǒ xiǎng dú yī jié jīngwén gěi nǐ tīng
我想读一节经文给你听。(Read Romans 15:4)
I want to read a scripture to you.

wǒ juéde rén míngbai shèngjīng hěn zhòngyào , suǒyǐ dài le yī fèn yāoqǐngdān lái gěi nǐ
我觉得人明白圣经很重要，所以带了一份邀请单来给你。
I feel that it's important for people to understand the Bible, so I brought an invitation for you.

(Give the householder an invitation to the Chinese meetings)

If you want to continue the conversation in English, you could say:

qǐngwèn nǐ huì shuō yīngwén ma
请问，你会说英文吗？
May I ask if you can speak English?

If they can understand English, then go ahead and speak to them in English. But, remember to speak simply, slowly, and clearly since English is not their native language. Also, remember that most Chinese people don't understand theocratic terms like "spiritual", "godly devotion", or "anointed" in Chinese, and especially not in English.

If they keep speaking in Chinese, and you don't understand what they are saying to you, you could say:

bùhǎoyìsi wǒ bù míngbai wǒ zhǐ huì shuō yìdiǎn pǔtōnghuà
不好意思、我不明白。我只会说一点普通话。
I'm sorry, I don't understand. I can only speak a little Mandarin.

xièxiè zàijiàn
谢谢！再见。

Thank you! Goodbye.



Pǔtōnghuà * dì 6 kè * Tiāndì : HEAVEN & EARTH

chuàngshìjì zuìchū shàngdì chuàngzào le tiān dì
创世纪 1:1: “最初，上帝 创造了天地。”

tiān
天 heaven / sky
tiāntáng
天堂 heaven (Christendom)
shènglíng
圣灵 the Holy Spirit
líng
灵 spirit
língtǐ
灵体 spirit person(s)
língjiè
灵界 the spirit world
tiānshàngde
天上的 heavenly
dìshàngde
地上的 earthly
wùzhìde
物质的 physical
shǔlíngde
属灵的 spiritual
chuàngzào
创造 to create
yǔzhòu
宇宙 the universe
tàiyáng
太阳 the sun
yuèliàng
月亮 the moon
xīngxīng
星星 the star (s)
kàn bú jiàn de
看不见的 invisible
kàn dé jiàn de
看得见的 visible
dà néng de
大能的 powerful
shí sì wàn sì qiān rén
十四万四千人 144,000
shòu gāo
受膏 anointed
xiǎo qún yáng
小群羊 the little flock
shēnghuó
* 生活 life (living, activities, etc.)

tiānqì
天气 the weather
dìqiú
地球 the earth
rénlèi
人类 mankind
zhèngfǔ
政府 government(s)
guójiā
国家 country(s)
bǎixìng
百姓 subjects/people
dòngwù
动物 animal (s)
shù mù
树木 tree (s)
huā huār
花 / 花儿 flower(s)
hǎiyáng
海洋 sea/ocean
měilì
美丽 beautiful
lèyuán
乐园 paradise
héping
和平 peace
wánměi
完美 perfect
bùwánměi
不完美 imperfect
yǒngyuǎn
永远 forever
yǒngshēng
永生 eternal life
sǐwáng
死亡 death
fùhuó
复活 resurrection
dàqún rén
大群人 the Great Crowd

shēngmìng
* 生命 life force : often used in
NWT where “soul” is used in English



FOR HOMEWORK: Some useful sentences to translate into English

1. yēhéhuá zhùzài tiānshàng 。
耶和華 住在 天上 。

2. yēhéhuá shì gè língtǐ 。
耶和華 是 個 靈體 。

3. yēhéhuá shì kànbújiànde 。
耶和華 是 看不見的 。

4. **CORRECT:** jīntiān tiānqì hěnhǎo !
今天 天氣 很好 ！



INCORRECT: jīntiān tiānqì hěnměilì !
今天 天氣 很美麗 ！

INCORRECT: jīntiān tiānqì wánměi !
今天 天氣 完美 ！

BONUS: wánměide rén huì yǒngyuǎn shēnghuó zài dìshàng de lèyuán lǐ 。
完美的人 會 永遠 生活 在 地上的 樂園 里 。

NEW VERB xīndòngcí 新動詞 **“做”** “To make, to do”
(Designed to be used with Total Physical Response method)

zuò fàn 做飯 “to make (food)”

zuò gōngzuò 做工作 “to do work”

zuò zuòyè 做作業 “to do homework”



nǐ zuò shénme gōngzuò ?
你 做 什麼 工作 ? What work do you do?

wǒ xiǎng zuò zuòyè 。
我 想 做 作業 。 I want to do homework.

wǒ yào zuò fàn 。
我 要 做 飯 。 I have to cook.

*The verb “zuò” has many usages and meanings. We are only covering one aspect of this verb at this time.

“to do” Grammar Chart
(Fill out this chart using vocabulary from this textbook. No dictionaries, please!)

Subject	aux. verb	zuò	object.
Rén	yīnggāi	zuò	gōngzuò.
		zuò	
		zuò	
		zuò	

Ex. People should do work. **Rén yīnggāi zuò gōngzuò.**

Reading and Pronunciation Practice

First, try reading this story outloud. Next, listen to the Mandarin Chinese audio files provided by the Branch and read along outloud simultaneously. Try to keep up with the pace of the reader. Use your finger to point at each word as you read it. Doing this will help your brain learn better. Try not to focus on what the words mean, rather on what they sound like and the flow of the tones. Listen to how the tones sound in relation to one another. Try your best to imitate the sounds and flow of Mandarin Chinese. It will take time for your muscles to become accustomed to making Chinese sounds, so read out loud in Chinese daily, if possible.

My Book of Bible Stories, Story # 2

Yīgè měilì de yuánzi

Kànkàn dìshàng de qíngxíng! Měi yī jiàn dōngxī dōu duōme měilì! Kàn kàn gèzhǒng huācǎo shùmù hé chóng yú niǎo shòu. Nǐ rěndéchū dàxiàng hé shīzi lái ma?

Zhèige měilì de yuánzi shì zěnmé lái de? Xiànzài, ràng wǒmen kànkàn Shàngdì zěnyàng bǎ yīqiè yùbèi tuōdàng, shǐ dìqiú shìhé wǒmen jūzhù.

Shǒuxiān, Shàngdì chuàngzào qīngcǎo qù fùgài dàdì. Tā yě zàochū gèzhǒng xīxiǎo de zhíwù, guànmù cóng hé dàshù. Zhèixiē dōngxī zài dìshàng shēngzhǎng, lìng dìqiú biànde shífēn měilì. Búdàn zhèyàng, xǔduō zhíwù gèng gōngjǐ wǒmen měiwèi kěkǒu de shíwù.

Hòulái, Shàngdì zào yú zài shuǐ lǐ yóu, zào niǎo zài kōng zhōng fēi. Tā zàole māo, gǒu hé mǎ, gè zhǒng dà dà xiǎo xiǎo de dòngwù. Nǐ jiā fùjìn yǒu shénme dòngwù? Shàngdì wèi wǒmen zào zhèxiē dōngxī, nándào wǒmen bù yìnggāi gāoxìng ma?

Zuìhòu, Shàngdì bǎ dìqiú de yībùfèn zàochéng yīgè fēicháng tèbié de dìfāng. Tā bǎ zhèige dìfāng chēngwéi Yīdiànyuán. Zhèige dìfāng shì shíquán shíměi de. Yuán lǐ měi yī jiàn dōngxī dōu fēicháng měilì. Shàngdì yào shǐ zhěnggè dìqiú dōu biàn chéng hǎoxiàng tā suǒ zào de zhège měilì yuánzi yīyàng.

Kěshì, qǐng nǐ zài kàn kàn zhè fú túhuà lǐ de yuánzi. Nǐ zhīdào Shàngdì fājué yuánzi quēshǎole shénme ma? Ràng wǒmen kàn kàn.

副词 Fùcí : Adverbs

An adverb is a descriptive word which modifies a verb, such as “slowly” or “quickly”. Many adverbs in English end with “-ly”. Some examples of how to use an adverb in English are: “He writes very quickly.” Or “She speaks Chinese very well.” Which words in those sentences modified the verbs? The words “quickly” and “well.” How do we know? We can ask ourselves this question: “How does he write?” The answer is “quickly”. Or we can ask “How does she speak Chinese?” The answer is “well”. “Quickly” and “well” are both adverbs.

To modify a verb in Mandarin, there is a useful formula we can use:

Subject + verb-object-verb + de + adjective.

Hěn hǎo (very good, well), màn (slow), and kuài (fast) are all adjectives. (See Lesson 4 for a list of common adjectives.) If you use an adjective to modify a verb instead of a noun, it will become an adverb.

Practice Using Adverbs

Subject	Verb	Object	Repeat Verb	de	Adjective
Tāmen	dú	jīngwén	dú	de	hěn hǎo.
Nǐ	shuō	yīngwén	shuō	de	kuài.
				de	
				de	
				de	
				de	

1. They read the Bible reading very well. Tāmen dú jīngwén dú de hěn hǎo.
2. You speak English quickly. Nǐ shuō Yīngwén shuō de kuài.

HOMEWORK: Please use vocabulary words from this and previous lessons to fill in the last four sentences in the grammar chart by yourself.

shèngjīng rénwù
圣经 人物

Bible Characters

Adam yàdāng 亚当

Eve xiàwá 夏娃

Noah nuóyà 挪亚

Abraham yàbólahǎn 亚伯拉罕

Job yuēbó 约伯

Moses móxī 摩西

David dàwèi 大卫

Daniel dàn'yǐlǐ 但以理



How to Talk About What You Will Do in the Future

Auxiliary verb : huì 会

Formula: Subject + huì + verb + object.

1. I will watch a movie. wǒ huì kàn diànyǐng
我 会 看 电影 。
2. Mr. Li will go to England tomorrow. lǐ xiānsheng míngtiān huì qù yīngguó
李 先生 明天 会 去 英国 。
3. I will go to America soon. wǒ bùjiǔ huì qù měiguó
我 不久 会 去 美国 。
4. She will start studying Mandarin. tā huì kāishǐ xuéxí pǔtōnghuà
她 会 开始 学习 普通话 。
5. I will study the Bible next week. wǒ xiàgèxīngqī huì yánjiū shèngjīng
我 下个星期 会 研究 圣经 。

NEW WORDS: *不久: *bùjiǔ* soon *开始: *kāishǐ* to start, begin

BIODATABASE - "乐园" Lèyuán Paradise

1. 在乐园里、你 会 做些什么事?
What will you do in paradise?
2. 在乐园里、你 会 跟谁见面?
Whom will you see in paradise?
3. 在乐园里、你 会 去哪些地方呢?
What places will you go in paradise?



“Huì” as we have learned before can mean to know how to do something, or “can”. For example, “Wǒ huì tiàowǔ!” means “I know how to dance”, or “I can dance.”

But, huì 会 (and also yào 要) have more than one meaning, depending on context: they can also mean “will”. In other words, these words describe something that is going to happen in the future. So, “Wǒ huì tiàowǔ!” can also mean, “I will dance!” “Wǒ yào tiàowǔ!” can mean “I will dance!”, too. It just depends on the context.

“Morning Activities”

Verb - Object Complexes

(designed to be used with the Total Physical Response method)

- chuān yīfu
1. 穿衣服 : to put on clothes
- hēchá
2. 喝茶 : to drink tea
- chīfàn
3. 吃饭 : to eat food
- chīyào
4. 吃药 : to take medicine
- kuàikuài de
5. 快地 : (adverb) quickly
- mànmàn de
6. 慢慢地 : (adverb) slowly



VERB OBJECT COMPLEXES

These activities are examples of “fixed phrases” in Chinese. They are also called “verb-object complexes” (or “VO” for short; this abbreviation is used in many dictionaries).

English speakers often say things like: “I am going to eat.” or “I am going to read.” Did you notice what these two sentences lack? The verbs “eat” and “read” don’t have *objects* in either of these sentences (for example: “eat a sandwich” or “read the Bible” - “sandwich” and “Bible” are both objects). This is OK in English, but in Chinese, a **verb is rarely left hanging without an object**. So, a Chinese person would say something like: “I am going to eat food,” or “I am going to read a book,” instead of “I am going to eat,” or “I am going to read.”

“Eat-food” (chīfàn) is a very common verb object complex in Chinese. The expression “chīfàn” is not specific. So, if you want to talk about eating something specific, like a **hamburger** (hànbāobāo), or a sandwich (sānmíngzhì) then you should replace the object “fàn” with a new object: “hànbāobāo”. (“Wǒ yào chī hànbāobāo”, or “Wǒ yào chī sānmíngzhì” instead of “Wǒ yào chī fàn.”) Exercise: How would you say: “I like to eat chicken with broccoli”? How would you say: “I want to eat General Tsao’s chicken?” or “I want to eat Hunan beef”? (hint: see sample Chinese menu in the appendix of this textbook.)

Another common verb object complex in Chinese is “kànshū”. This VO complex is also not specific. It simply means “to read books”. If you were to look this VO complex up in a dictionary, the definition may say “to read” or “to study”. But, remember, a VO complex is made up of **a verb and a noun**. “Kàn” means “to read” and “shū” means “book”. Exercise: How would you say: “read the Bible”? How about “read the Watchtower”? or “read a magazine”?

Probably the most common VO complex that we use as Jehovah’s Witnesses is “chuándào”. We have learned that this means “to preach”. But, literally, “chuándào” means “to preach the word”. So, how do we say: “Preach the good news”? Chuán hǎoxiāoxi! Not: chuándào hǎoxiāoxi. Why is this incorrect? Please answer this question as part of your homework.

Pǔtōnghuà * dì 7 kè * Sādàn de Shìjiè * Satan's World

yúlè
娱乐 recreation

yīnyuè
音乐 music

diànzǐ yóuxì
电子 游戏 video game

diànyǐng
电影 movie

diànshì
电视 TV

jiémù
节目 program

wǎngluò
网络 internet

sèqíng
色情 pornography

bùdàodé
不道德 immoral

bàolì
暴力 violent

xīdú
吸毒 to do drugs

xīyān
吸烟 to smoke (cigarettes)

zuìjiǔ
醉酒 drunkenness

shuōhuǎng
说谎 to lie

èrén
恶人 wicked person

xié'è
邪恶 evil

bùliáng
不良 bad

jiāowǎng
交往 association

péngyǒu
朋友 friend

gōngzuò
工作 work



qián
钱 money

tóngxué
同学 classmate

tóngshì
同事 co-worker

yǐngxiǎng
影响 influence

bǎngyàng
榜样 example

lìzi
例子 for instance

fǎnpàn
反叛 rebel

tàidù
态度 attitude

jīngshén
精神 spirit

yántán
言谈 speech

yīzhuó dǎbàn
衣著 打扮 clothing

chuántǒng
传统 tradition

xísú
习俗 custom

jié rì
节日 holiday(s)

wénhuà
文化 culture

piānjiàn
偏见 prejudice

qióngrén
穷人 poor people

xīnkǔ
辛苦 very difficult

nántí
难题 problem, difficulty

fànzuì
犯罪 to commit sin

wūrǎn
污染 pollution



Some useful phrases:

moral cleanness

dàodé de jiéjìng
道德 的 洁净

physical cleanness

shēntǐ de jiéjìng
身体 的 洁净

mental cleanness

sīxiǎng de jiéjìng
思想 的 洁净

spiritual cleanness

língxìng de jiéjìng
灵性 的 洁净

unclean practices

bùjié de xíngwéi
不洁 的 行为

bǐdéqiánshū
彼得前书 5:7 :

nǐmen yào bǎ suǒyǒude
“你们 要把 所有的
yōulǜ xiègěi shàngdì yīnwéi
忧虑 卸给 上帝，因为
tā guānxīn nǐmen
他 关心 你们。”

READING AND PRONUNCIATION

HOMEWORK: Highlight words that you recognize in the below scriptures. Look up any words you don't know. Compare the English scriptures with the Chinese and particularly pay attention to how certain expressions are translated, such as "bad associations." Memorize new vocabulary words from this lesson with a partner using flashcards. Write daily journal entries about what you would like to do in Paradise & what you look forward to about Paradise, using the new verb "hui" from the next page along with as much vocabulary from this lesson & past lessons as you can. Try to use vocabulary words from past lessons that you have trouble remembering in your journal. This will help to make the words your own. Don't forget to respond to any questions from your instructor in your journal from the previous weeks. You may even include questions for them in your journal.

chuàngshìjì yēhéhuá shàngdì zào tiányě lǐ gèyàng de dòngwù qízhōng
创世纪 3:1-6 “耶和華 上帝 造 田野 里 各 样 的 动 物 、 其 中
shé zuì jǐnshèn shé duì nǚrén shuō shàngdì zhēnde shuō nǐmen bùkě chī
蛇 最 谨 慎 。 蛇 对 女 人 说 ： “ 上 帝 真 的 说 你 们 不 可 吃
yuánzi lǐ gèyàng shùshàng de guǒzi ma nǚrén duì shé shuō yuánzi lǐ
园 子 里 各 样 树 上 的 果 子 吗 ？ 女 人 对 蛇 说 ： “ 园 子 里
shùshàng de guǒzi wǒmen dōu kěyǐ chī zhǐshì yuánzi zhōngjiān nèi kē shù
树 上 的 果 子 、 我 们 都 可 以 吃 。 只 是 园 子 中 间 那 棵 树
shàng de guǒzi shàngdì céngjīng shuō nǐmen bùkěchī yě bùkě mō miǎnde
上 的 果 子 、 上 帝 曾 经 说 ： ‘ 你 们 不 可 吃 、 也 不 可 摸 、 免 得
sǐwáng shé duì nǚrén shuō nǐmen yídìng búhuì sǐ zhǐshì shàngdì zhīdào
死 亡 。 ’ ” 蛇 对 女 人 说 ： “ 你 们 一 定 不 会 死 。 只 是 上 帝 知 道
nǐmen chīle nà yītiān nǐmen de xīnyǎn jiù bì dǎkāi nǐmen bì xiàng shàngdì
你 们 吃 了 、 那 一 天 你 们 的 心 眼 就 必 打 开 、 你 们 必 像 上 帝
yíyàng néng biànshí shàn è yúshì nǚrén jiàn nèi kē shù de guǒzi hǎo zuò
一 样 、 能 辨 识 善 恶 。 ” 於 是 女 人 见 那 棵 树 的 果 子 好 作
shíwù shífēn hǎokàn shízài shǎngxīnyuè mù jiù zhāixià guǒzi lái chī le hòulái tā gēn
食 物 、 十 分 好 看 ， 实 在 赏 心 悦 目 、 就 摘 下 果 子 来 吃 了 。 后 来 她 跟
zhàngfu zài yìqǐ de shíhou jiù gěi le zhàngfu tā zhàngfu yě chī le
丈 夫 在 一 起 的 时 候 就 给 了 丈 夫 、 她 丈 夫 也 吃 了 。 ”

féilibǐshū jīdū yēsū huáiyǒu zěnyàngde
腓立比书 2:5 基督 耶稣 怀 有 怎 样 的

jīngshén nǐmen yě yào huáiyǒu zěnyàngde jīngshén
精 神 ， 你 们 也 要 怀 有 怎 样 的 精 神 。

gēlín duōqiánshū búyào shòu míhuo bùliáng
哥林多前书 15:33 不 要 受 迷 惑 。 不 良

de jiāowǎng pòhuài yǒuyì de xíguàn
的 交 往 破 坏 有 益 的 习 惯 。

yǎgèshū nǐmen shuō jīntiān huò míngtiān
雅各书 4:13 你 们 说 ： ‘ 今 天 或 明 天 、
wǒmen yào dào mǒu chéng qù zài nàlǐ zhù yī
我 们 要 到 某 城 去 ， 在 那 里 住 一

nián zuò shēngyì zhuàn qián
年 ， 做 生 意 赚 钱 。 ’

gēluóxīshū búyào bǐcǐ shuōhuǎng
歌罗西书 3:9 不 要 彼 此 说 谎 。

luómǎshū yào nǔlì biǎoxiàn hàokè jīngshén
罗马书 12:13 要 努 力 表 现 好 客 精 神 。

shīpiān yìrén èrén yēhéhuá dōu yào cháyan fán
诗篇 11:5 义 人 恶 人 ， 耶 和 华 都 要 查 验 ； 凡
xǐ'ài bàoli de rén tā bì hènwù
喜 爱 暴 力 的 人 ， 他 必 恨 恶 。

tiēsālúnjīqiánshū búduàn dǎogào
帖撒罗尼迦前书 5:17 不 断 祷 告 。

Measure Words 量词 Liàngcí

Formula: number + MW + noun.



A **herd** of horses. A **flock** of birds. Three **loaves** of bread. Nine **pairs** of shoes.

English has many words to describe GROUPS of nouns. Chinese has even more!

When a person is talking about a SPECIFIC NUMBER of nouns (for example: a book, 3 people, 10 cars, an angel, etc) a **MEASURE WORD (MW for short)** must be used in between the number and the noun.

(Remember, when we say “a dog” in English, this translates as “one dog” in Chinese.)

EVERY NOUN in Chinese has a specific measure word that is associated with it. Here are some examples: *yī běn shū* (a book), *sān gè rén* (3 people), *shí běn zázhì* (10 magazines). Some dictionaries list nouns along with the proper measure word to use for that noun. If you are not sure which measure word to use for a particular noun, then use “ge”. This is better than not using a measure word at all! **Measure words are so important that if you forget to use a measure word between a number and a noun or use the wrong measure word, the person you are talking with may not understand what you are trying to say.** Even in English it would sound very strange to say “I ate three breads today.” We wouldn’t understand if the person meant “three slices of bread” or “three loaves of bread”.

If you simply want to say “several” of something without saying a specific number, instead of a measure word you would use “yīxiē”. For example: “several books”: *yī xiē shū*, “several people”: *yī xiē rén*, etc. Yīxiē can be used with any noun. If you see “xiē” used in a sentence, remember that it means that the noun it is used with is **plural**.

If you want to talk about a noun in general, without saying a specific number, then you shouldn’t use a measure word. For example: *Shàngdì ài rén*. God loves people. or *Wǒ xǐhuān kàn shū*. I like to read books. In these sentences a specific number is not mentioned, so a MW is not needed. English is similar in this. For example: You may say, “I am going to the store to buy bread.” This is a very general statement. If you wanted to be specific, you would say something like, “I am going to the store to buy two loaves of bread.”

Note: Some dictionaries call measure words “classifiers” and use the abbreviation CL instead of MW.

GRAMMAR CHART

Subject	Verb	Number	MW	Noun
Wǒ	yǒu	qī	kuài	qián.

Ex: Wǒ yǒu qī kuài qián. I have seven dollars.

SOME COMMON MEASURE WORDS AND THEIR MEANINGS

gè 个	“all purpose measure word”; used for people, Jehovah, angels, and individuals.
wèi 位	used to denote respect; used for Jehovah, angels, and people in respected positions.
zhī 只	used for most mammals (dogs, cats, sheep, etc), also birds
běn 本	used for objects with a binding (books, Bibles, encyclopedias, etc)
zhāng 张	used for flat, horizontal objects (tables, desks, paper, etc)
fèn 份	used for jobs, newspapers, tracts, and gifts.
duì 对	used for a pair or couple (yī duì fūfù: a husband and wife; a couple)
tiáo 条	used for long, skinny things like snakes, rivers, rope, ribbon, etc
liàng 辆	used for vehicles (cars, trucks, taxis, etc)
kuài 块	used for lumps of things including money (think “a lump sum”)

BIODATABASE *Answer Question: Which One?* Nǎ + MW + Noun

nǐ xǐhuan qù nǎyige guójiā
1. 你 喜欢 去 哪一个 国家？ **Which country do you like to go to?** (pick only one)

zhōngguó	rìběn	mòxīgē	jiānádà	fǎguó	éguó	àodàliya	xībānyá	yīngguó
中国	日本	墨西哥	加拿大	法国	俄国	澳大利亚	西班牙	英国
<i>China</i>	<i>Japan</i>	<i>Mexico</i>	<i>Canada</i>	<i>France</i>	<i>Russia</i>	<i>Australia</i>	<i>Spain</i>	<i>England</i>

nǐ xǐhuan nǎzhī dòngwù
2. 你 喜欢 哪只 动物？ **Which animal do you like?** (pick only one)

gǒu	māo	shīzi	mǎ	tùzi	zhū	luòtuo	dàxiàng	shé
狗	猫	狮子	马	兔子	猪	骆驼	大象	蛇
<i>dog</i>	<i>cat</i>	<i>lion</i>	<i>horse</i>	<i>rabbit</i>	<i>pig</i>	<i>camel</i>	<i>elephant</i>	<i>snake</i>



nǐ xǐhuan nǎxiē jīngwén
3. 你 喜欢 哪些 经文？ **Which scriptures do you like?** (pick more than one)

**Be very careful to use a LOW tone when using “nǎ” (which) to ask a question. If you accidentally use the 4th tone, “nà” (that), instead of third tone, then you are making a *statement*, not asking a question. As you practice with each other, if you notice that a fellow student’s third tone is not low enough, be sure to kindly point it out to them.



In order to successfully speak a foreign language, it is essential to first learn to THINK SIMPLY. If you are just beginning to learn a foreign language, your available vocabulary is very limited- like a child's. So, try to learn to think within the limits of your available vocabulary. In the first year or two of learning a language, you must learn to speak like you would speak to a very young child. Don't try to use the "big words" that you may normally use in your mother tongue. Often, these words are really not necessary to get the basic thought across.

Additionally, avoid using long, complicated sentences. Instead, break long sentences into several shorter sentences. Often, you will find that where there is an "and" between two phrases in a long English sentence, the Chinese translation will have two shorter sentences instead. An example of this can be found in the 1/15/10 Watchtower. In English, a question in one of the study articles says: "What is "the secret place of the Most High," and whom does God protect in it?" In the Chinese Watchtower, this question is split into two questions: "What is the secret place of the Most High?" and "Whom does God protect in this secret place?"

Avoiding long, complicated sentences is especially important in Chinese, because spoken Chinese tends to be much less wordy than English. Written Chinese sentences can be very long at times, but usually spoken Chinese sentences are quite short - much shorter than English sentences usually are!

Also, if you don't know a specific word in Chinese (such as "Corvette"), try to think of a less specific one that you do know (like "car"). Hopefully the following exercise will help you to practice doing this!

Translate the following sentences into Chinese Pinyin, no Chinglish allowed!

hǎiyáng hěn měilì

1. The ocean is magnificent. 海洋 很 美丽。 (HINT: instead of "magnificent", say "beautiful")

2. I am going out in field service today. _____.

3. Our planet has been desecrated by selfish people who lack love of God.
_____.

4. Jehovah originally created the earth to be a home for mankind.
_____.

5. We need to imitate Jesus' example and avoid unclean practices such as drunkenness and immorality. _____.

Imperatives

Imperative verbs are used to give *instructions, advice, or commands*.

yīnggāi 应该: should (often shortened to “yīng” or “gāi” in books)

suǒyǐ yǒu yī yǒu shí jiù gāi zhīzú
1 Tim 6:8 “所以，有衣有食，就**该**知足。”

bìxū 必须: must (often shortened to “bì” or “xū” in books)

nǐmen yào bùduàn xiān zhuīqiú wángguó hé tā de
Mt 6:33 “你们要不断先追求王国和他的
zhèngyì zhè yíqiè biéde dōngxi bì cìgěi nǐmen le
正义、这一切别的东西**必**赐给你们了。”

xūyào 需要: to need (often shortened to “xū” in books)

wǒmen jīntiān suǒ xū de shíwù
Mt 6:11 “我们今天**所需**的食物、
qiú nǐ jīntiān cìgěi wǒmen
求你今天**赐给**我们。”



Grammar Chart: Please completely fill out without using a dictionary.

Subject	imperative	verb	object
rén 人	xūyào 须要	kàn 看	shèngjīng 圣经。

Ex: People need to read the Bible. **Rén xūyào kàn Shèngjīng**。

**Starting a Bible study in the Bible Teach book
Adapted from the 1/06 "Our Kingdom Ministry"**

As part of your homework, memorize this presentation, practice it with a partner, & use it in the ministry.

Show the householder page 6 of the Bible Teach book and ask:

"Have you ever wondered about any of these questions?"

nǐ yǒu méiyǒu xiǎngguò zhèxiē wèntí

" 你 有 没 有 想 过 这 些 问 题 ？ "

Then, turn to the appropriate page and paragraph and ask the householder to read it, this way:

"Please read paragraph number #." or "Please read paragraphs number # and #."

máfan nǐ dú dì duàn máfan nǐ dú dì gēn dì duàn

麻 烦 你 读 第 # 段 。 or 麻 烦 你 读 第 # 跟 第 # 段 。

"There is a question here." (point to it) "What is the answer?"

(Listen to householder's response.)

zhèlǐ yǒu yīgè wèntí wèntí de dá'àn shì shénme ne

这 里 有 一 个 问 题 。 问 题 的 答 案 是 什 么 呢 ？

"There is a scripture here." (point to it) "Let's read it together."

zhèlǐ yǒu yījié jīngwén ràng wǒmen yìqǐ kànkàn

这 里 有 一 节 经 文 。 让 我 们 一 起 看 看 。

"I would like to come back next week and continue to discuss this question, OK?"

wǒ xiǎng _____ zàilái jìxù gēn nǐ tāolùn zhègè wèntí hǎo ma

我 想 _____ 再 来 继 续 跟 你 讨 论 这 个 问 题 、 好 吗 ？

(Fill in the blank with the missing word)

nǐ shénme shíhòu yǒu kòng ne

"When is a good time for you?" 你 什 么 时 候 有 空 呢 ？

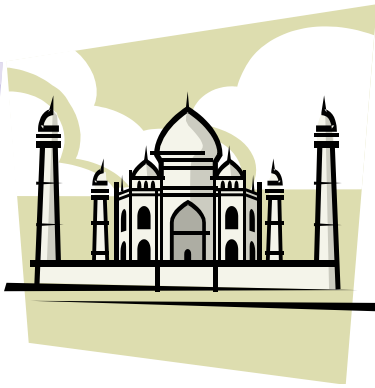
"OK, I will return on _____. See you then!" (Do you remember how to say this in Chinese?)

Answers to Questions on Page 6

- Wéishènme rén huì shòukǔ? (pp. 108-9, pars. 6-8)
- Zěnyàng cáinéng kèfú shēnghuó shàng de zhǒngzhǒng yōulù? (pp. 184-5, pars. 1-3)
- Zěnyàng cáinéng lìng jiātíng gèngjiā xìngfú? (p. 143, par. 20)
- Rén sǐhòu de qíngxíng shì zěnyàng de? (pp. 58-9, pars. 5-6)
- Wǒmen néng gēn sǐqù de qīnyǒu chóngjù ma? (pp. 72-3, pars. 17-19)
- Wǒmen zěnmē zhīdào Shàngdì bìdìng shíxiàn tā duìyú wèilái de yīngxǔ? (p. 25, par. 17)

zōngjiào
Pǔtōnghuà dì 8 kè **宗教** **RELIGION**

wǒmen shì shàngdì de tónggōng
 “我们 是 上帝 的 同工。”（哥林多前书 3:9）



the Governing Body :

zhōngyāng zhǎnglǎo tuán
 中央 長老 团

fēnqūjiāndū
 分区监督 *Circuit Overseer*

tiānfù
 天父 *Heavenly Father*

zōngjiào
 宗教 *religion (s)*

cuòwùdezōngjiào
 错误的 宗教 *false religion*

chóngbài
 崇拜 *worship*

xìnyǎng
 信仰 *beliefs*

xiāngxìn
 相信 *to believe*

dàolǐ
 道理 *sense, reason*

mìngyùn
 命运 *destiny, fate*

dìyù
 地狱 *hell*

kǔxíngzhù
 苦刑柱 *torture stake*

shízìjià
 十字架 *the cross*

sānwèiyītǐ
 三位一体 *trinity*

tōnglíngshù
 通灵术 *spiritism*

línghún
 灵魂 *soul (pagan)*

kězēngde
 可憎的 *detestable*

ǒuxiàng
 偶像 *image (s)*

xīnnián
 新年 *New Years*

chūnjié
 春节 *Chinese New Year*

wànshèngjié
 万圣节 *Halloween*

shēngrì
 生日 *birthday*

shèngdànjié
 圣诞节 *Christmas*

fùhuójié
 复活节 *Easter*

gǎn'ēnjié
 感恩节 *Thanksgiving*

héhéběn
 和合本 *the Union Bible*

shén
 神 *God, gods*

wúshénlùn
 无神论 *atheism*

jìnhuàlùn
 进化论 *theory of evolution*

jīdūjiào
 基督教 *Christianity*

zhēn jīdūtú
 真 基督徒 *true Christian*

jiǎ jīdūtú
 假基督徒 *false Christian*

tiānzhǔjiào
 天主教 *Catholic*

dàbābīlún
 大巴比伦 *Babylon the Great*

jiàotáng
 教堂 *church, cathedral*

jiàohuì
 教会 *church*

jiàopài
 教派 *sect*

xiéjiào
 邪教 *cult*

shòu xǐ
 受洗 *baptize (Christendom)*

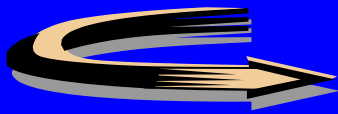
shòujìn
 受浸 *baptize (theocratic)*

tónggōng
 同工 *fellow worker (religious)*

tóngshì
 同事 *co-worker (secular)*

mùshī
 牧师 *clergyman*

shénfù
 神父 *Father, priest (Catholic title: literally means "spiritual or divine Father")*



zài

在

(to be at, in, on)

Subject + zài + thing/place/person + position word.

1. Zài (noun) shàng miàn 在...上面

shàngmiàn

上面 - on, above

ex: Shū zài zhuōzi shàngmiàn 。

2. Zài(noun) xià miàn 在...下面

xiàmiàn

下面 - under, down

ex: Shū zài zhuōzi xiàmiàn。

3. Zài (noun) lǐ miàn 在...里面

lǐ miàn

里面 - in, inside

ex: Shū zài bāo lǐmiàn。

4. Zài (noun) wài miàn 在...外面

wàimiàn

外面 - outside

ex: Shū zài bāo wàimiàn。

5. Zài (noun) páng biān 在...旁边

pángbiān

旁边 - side

ex: Shū zài zázhi pángbiān。

6. Zài (noun) qián miàn 在...前面

qiánmiàn

前面 - in front, ahead

ex: Shū zài nǐ qiánmiàn。

7. Zài (noun) hòu miàn 在...后面

hòumiàn

后面 - at the back, behind

ex: Shū zài nǐ hòumiàn。

8. Zài (noun and noun) zhōng jiān 在...中间

zhōngjiān

中间 - in the middle

ex: Shū zài nǐ hé zhuōzi zhōngjiān。

9. Zài (noun) duì miàn 在...对面

duìmiàn

对面 - opposite side of

ex: Jiàotáng zài wǒ nǎinai de jiā duìmiàn。

For homework: Translate the example sentences on this page into English. Use flashcards to memorize all new vocabulary from lesson 8. Try to practice them along with this week's presentation with a partner. Write daily journal entries as usual. In one journal entry, write a simple description of some of the objects in your home. Use the position words on this page. (Ex: The sofa is on the rug.) Try to use the questions from the Biographical Database when talking with Chinese people in the ministry. Fully fill out this week's grammar chart using as much vocabulary from current & past lessons as possible.

在 zài: How to Describe the Position of Something or Someone

Subject	zài	location	position word
shèngjīng 圣经	zài 在	wǒ 我	zhèlǐ 这里。
yēhéhuá 耶和华	zài 在	tiān 天	shàng 上。
rén 人	zài 在	dì 地	shàng 上。
	zài 在		
	zài 在		
	zài 在		
	zài 在		
	zài 在		
	zài 在		
	zài 在		
	zài 在		
	zài 在		
	zài 在		
	zài 在		

shèngjīng zài wǒ zhèlǐ
ex. The Bible is here with me. 圣经 在 我 这里。

yēhéhuá zài tiānshàng
Jehovah is in heaven. 耶和 华 在 天 上 。

rén zài dìshàng
People are on earth. 人 在 地 上 。

ADDITIONAL NOTES:

- A person can be used as a location in Chinese. The first sentence in the grammar chart means: “The Bible is here with me.”
- Position words like lǐmiàn, shàngmiàn, and xiàmiàn are often shortened to shàng, xià, and lǐ, etc.
- Most of the time, with some exceptions, if zài is used in a sentence, a corresponding position word (shàng, xià, etc) will also be used in the sentence.

READING AND PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE

Excerpt taken from the article “Lunar New Year– Is It For Christians?” w09 12/1 pg 20

Jīdūtú yīng bù yīnggāi qìngzhù chūnjié? Měinián dào le yī、èr yuè, Yàzhōu dōu huì chūxiàn yīnián yīdù shìshàng zuìdà guīmó de rén kǒu liú dòng, shuō yǐ yì de yàzhōu rén huì fǎnhuí jiāxiāng gēn jiārén tuánjù, qìngzhù chūnjié. Chūnjié shì yàzhōu rén zuì zhòngshì de jiérì. Yīgè Měiguó zuòjiā shuō, zhège jiérì “jiù xiàng bǎ yuándàn*, měiguó dúlì jìniàn rì*, gǎn'ēnjié hé shèngdànjié jiā qǐ lái nàme zhòngyào”. Chūnjié shǐyú Zhōngguó nónglì (yīnlì) měinián dì yīgè xīnyuè chūxiàn nàitiān, yě jiùshì gōnglì 1 yuè 21 rì zhì 2 yuè 20 rì zhī jiān, bìng yánxù jǐ tiān zhì liǎng zhōu bùděng.

Yàzhōu rén juéde xīn de yīnián shì xīn de kāishǐ, suǒyǐ chūnjié de xǔduō qìngzhù huódòng dōu gēn qùjiù yíngxīn yǒuguān. Jiérì lái dào qián, rénmen huì dǎsǎo hé zhuāngshì jiājū, mǎi xīnyī, zuò yīxiē míngchéng gēn “jí lì” huò “fācái” yāyùn de shípǐn, yě huì qīng huánzhài xiànghé gēn biérén yánguī yúhǎo. Niánchū yī nàitiān, rénmen huì hùxiāng sònglǐ, bìng gōnghè duìfāng fācái. Tāmen yě pài hóngbāo (lì shì), chī hèninián shípǐn, fàng biānpào, kàn wǔlóng wǔshī, gēn jiārén qīnyǒu yīqǐ huāndù jiérì.

基督徒应不应该庆祝春节？

每年到了一、二月，亚洲都会出现一年一度世上最大规模的人口流动，数以亿计的亚洲人会返回家乡跟家人团聚，庆祝春节。

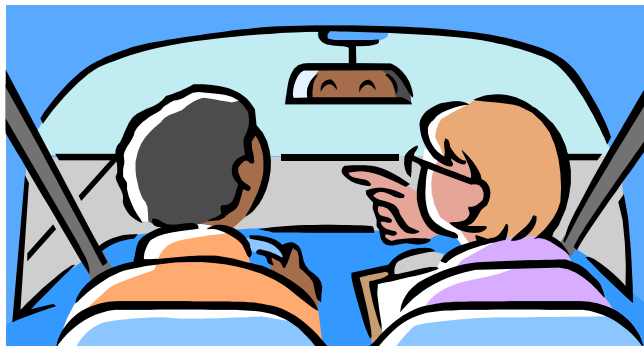
春节是亚洲人最重视的节日。一个美国作家说，这个节日“就像把元旦、美国独立纪念日、感恩节和圣诞节加起来那么重要”。春节始于中国农历（阴历）每年第一个新月出现那天，也就是公历1月21日至2月20日之间，并延续几天至两周不等。

亚洲人觉得新的一年是新的开始，所以春节的许多庆祝活动都跟去旧迎新有关。节日来到前，人们会打扫和装饰家居，买新衣，做一些名称跟“吉利”或“发财”押韵的食品，也会清还债项和跟别人言归于好。年初一那天，人们会互相送礼，并恭贺对方发财。他们也派红包（利市），吃贺年食品，放鞭炮，看舞龙舞狮，跟家人亲友一起欢度节日。

*yuándàn: New Year's Day *dúlì jìniàn rì: Independence Day

HOW TO SAY:

“to arrive at” or “go to”: dào 到 (common synonym: zhì 至)



“to arrive at (a place)” or “by (a certain time)”

S + dào + le. or S + time + dào.

wǒmen dào le

1. 我们 到了! *We have arrived!*

nǐ yéye dào le ma

2. 你爷爷 到了吗? *Has your grandfather arrived yet?*

gōnggòngqìchē qīdiǎnbàn dào

3. 公共汽车 七点半 到。 *The bus arrives at 7:30.*

dào le zǎoshang jiǔdiǎn yǒu shíliù gè rén dàodá jùhuìsuǒ

4. 到了 早上 九点, 有 十六个人 到达 聚会所。 _____

“to go to” (a place) or “to” (a place)

S + dào + place + qù. or S + dàoguò + place. or

S + dào + place + lái.

In sentences # 6, 7, 8, and 9, “dào” functions like the English word “to”.

nǐ dàoguò zhōngguó ma

5. 你到 过 中国 吗? *Have you ever been to China before?*

wǒ bàba dào mòxīgē qù le

6. 我爸爸 到 墨西哥 去了。 *My dad went to Mexico.*

yēsū dào tiānshàng qù le ma

7. 耶稣 到 天上 去了吗? *Did Jesus go to heaven?*

wǒ xiǎng yāoqǐng nǐmen dào wǒ jiā chīfàn

8. 我 想 邀请 你们 到 我家 吃饭。 _____

mǎtàifúyīn dì liù zhāng dì sānshíyī dào sānshí sān jié

9. 马太福音 第 六 章 第 三十一 到 三十三 节。 *Matthew 6:31 to 33.*

rén dōu dào nǎli qù le

10. “人 都 到 哪里 去了?” *“Where did all the people go?”* (quote from 2003 yb, pg 98)

NOTE: When using “dào”, it is not necessary to use “zài” (at, in, or on) because the word “dào” already includes the idea of “at”.

GRAMMAR CHARTS

How to Use “dào” 到

Subject	dào	place	verb.
Yēsū	dào	Yēlùsālěng	qù.
	dào		
	dào		
	dào		
	dào		
	dào		

Ex. Jesus went to Jerusalem. Yēsū dào Yēlùsālěng qù.

How to Say that Someone or Something Arrives at a Certain Time

Subject	time	dào
Mǎ dìxiōng	zǎoshàng bā diǎn bàn	dào.
		dào.
		dào.
		dào.

Ex. Brother Ma arrives at 8:30 in the morning. Mǎ dìxiōng zǎoshàng bā diǎn bàn dào.

Biographical Database

“Getting to know the householder”

Interview at least 3 classmates. Speak only in Chinese! Please use a separate piece of paper to write down your classmate's names and responses in Pinyin, not characters. Be prepared to introduce your 3 classmates to the class *in Chinese* at the end of this exercise! The point of this exercise is to practice speaking, listening comprehension, and writing skills.

nín de hái zi jiào shén me míng zi

1. 您的孩子叫什么名字？

What are your children's names?

Answer: (Make up some children's names if you don't have kids.)

nín de hái zi jǐ suì

2. 您的孩子几岁？

How old are your children?

Answer: wǒ de hái zi # suì.
我的孩子 # 岁。
My children are # years old.

nín gāng lái měi guó ma

3. 您刚来美国吗？

Did you just come to America?

Answer: duì wǒ gāng lái měi guó. bù wǒ yǐ jīng zhù zài měi guó nián gè yuè.
对、我刚来美国。 or 不、我已经住在美国 # 年、or # 个月。
That's correct, I just came to America. / No, I have been in America for # years or # of months.

nín de jiā rén zhù zài nǎ lǐ

4. 您的家人住在哪里？

Where does your family live?

Answer: wǒ de jiā rén zhù zài _____.
我的家人住在 _____。
My family lives in/at _____.



nín de dì zhǐ shì shén me

5. 您的地址是 什麼？

What is your address?

Answer: wǒ de dì zhǐ shì _____.
我的地址是 _____。
My address is _____.

NOTE: To say your street address, add a 号 ^{hào} after your house number. For example: “I live at 16 Piano road,” is “Wǒ zhù zài 16 hào Piano jiē,” in Chinese. “Hào” is also used after route or highway numbers. ex: Route 2 is “èr hào lù”. How would you say: Route 7? or Route 66?

Liànxí Jièshàocí : Practice with Presentations

An English translation was not provided for most of this presentation, since we have memorized most of it already. If you are unclear on what any sentences mean, check past lessons.

nǐhǎo lái bài fǎng nín wǒ shì nín guì xìng
你好！来 拜访 您。我是 (name)。您 贵 姓？
(Listen carefully for the householder's surname.)

qǐng nín kàn yī jié jīngwén
请 您 看 一 节 经 文。(Read Psalm 37:29)

hǎorén huì yǒngyuǎn shēnghuó zài shénme dìfang
好 人 会 永 远 生 活 在 什 么 地 方？
Good people will live forever in what place?
(Listen carefully to the householder's response.)

Hopefully the householder will say:

dìqiú dìshàng
"地球" or "地上")

Then you can commend them and say:

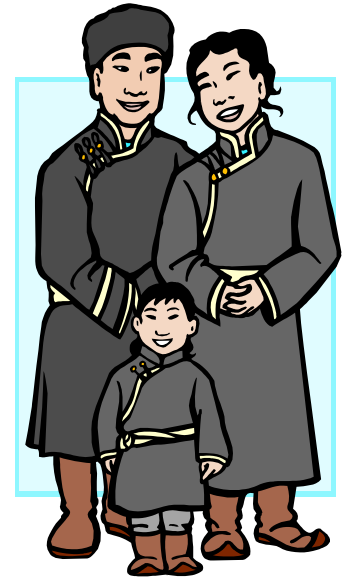
wǒ xiǎng xiàgèxīngqī zài lái bài fǎng nín hǎoma
我 想 下 个 星 期 再 来 拜 访 您、好 吗？

hǎo kěyǐ xíng
(If they respond: "好", or "可以", or "行", then ask the next question.)

nín shénme shíhou yǒu kòng ne
您 什 么 时 候 有 空 呢？

(Listen carefully to response! They are telling you when to come back.)

hǎo xiàgèxīngqī jiàn zàijiàn
好、下 个 星 期 _____ 见！ 再 见！



Are you having trouble remembering certain words in this presentation? Write some sentences in your journal using those words in order to make them part of your working vocabulary. Write at least three sentences per word that you are having difficulty with. You will find that this really helps with future recall.

nǐmen yào qīnjìn shàngdì shàngdì jiù huì qīnjìn nǐmen
" 你们 要 亲近 上帝 、 上帝 就会 亲近 你们 。 " James 4:8

第 9 课 : *Our Relationship With God & Prayer*

tiānfù
天父 *Heavenly Father*

dǎogào
祷告 *prayer, to pray*

mòdǎo
默 祷 *silent prayer*

qíqiú
祈求 *to pray for*

yuàn
愿 "may..."

chuíting
垂听 *listen (by God)*

qīnjìn
亲近 *to draw close to*

gǎndòng
感动 *to move (heart)*

gǎnjī
感激 *appreciate, grateful*

gǎnxiè
感谢 *to thank*

zhǐyì
旨意 *will, purpose*

shènglíng
圣灵 *holy spirit*

shǔlíng
属灵 *spiritual*

kuānshù
宽恕 *to forgive*

fàn
犯 *to commit (a sin)*

zuì
罪 *sin*

guòcuò
过错 *mistake, error*

huǐgǎi
悔改 *to repent*

zàowùzhǔ
造物主 *Creator*

yǔzhòude
宇宙 的 *universal*

zhǔzǎi
主宰 *Sovereign*

guānxi
关系 *relationship*

yǒuyì
友谊 *friendship*

zànměi
赞美 *to praise*

róngyào
荣耀 *to glorify*

shùnfú
顺服 *to submit*

shíxiàn
实现 *to fulfill, take place*

fúcéng
服从 *to obey*

yīkào
依靠 *to rely on*

bǎohù
保护 *to protect*

zhàogù
照顾 *to take care of*

bāngzhù
帮助 *to help*

qiánghuà
强化 *to strengthen*

zhǐyǐn
指引 *to guide*

zhōngyú
忠於 *to be loyal to*

jìnbù
进步 *to progress*

zhùfú
祝福 *to bless, blessing*

shíwù
食物 *food*

měitiānde xūyào
每天 的 需要 *daily needs*

xīn
心 *heart*

nèixīn
内心 *inner heart*

ài xīn
爱心 *love (noun)*

guānxīn
关心 *to care about*

xìnxīn
信心 *faith*

kěngqiè
恳切 *sincere, earnest*

zhōngxīn
忠心 *loyal*

qiānbēi
谦卑 *humble*

zhìhuì
智慧 *wisdom*

jìngwèi
敬畏 *to fear, awe (God)*

péiyǎng
培养 *to cultivate*

cìgěi
赐给 *to give, to grant*

ēncì
恩赐 *gift (from God)*

xīshēng
牺牲 *to sacrifice*

xiànshēn
献身 *to dedicate*

jìnli
尽力 *to do (one's) best*

Ways to Open a Prayer

wǒmen de tiānfù yēhéhuá

我们的天父, 耶和华... Our heavenly Father, Jehovah...

yǔzhòu zhìgāodezhūzǎi yēhéhuá

宇宙 至高的主宰 耶和华,... Universal Sovereign Jehovah,...

yēhéhuá wǒmen qiānbēi de xiàng nǐ dǎogào

耶和华, 我们 谦卑地 向你 祷告,... Jehovah, we humbly pray to you...

Examples of how to use new vocabulary

qíqiú nǐ chuítīng wǒmen de dǎogào

祈求你 垂听 我们的 祷告。 Please listen to our prayer.

yuàn nǐ de míng zhāngxiǎnwéishèng

愿你的名 彰显为 圣。 May your name be sanctified.

yuàn nǐ de zhǐyì shíxiàn

愿你的旨意 实现。 May your will take place.

gǎnxiè nǐ cìgěi wǒmen shèngjīng

感谢你 赐给 我们 圣经。 Thank you for giving us the Bible.

gǎnxiè nǐ zhàogù wǒmen měitiān de xūyào

感谢你 照顾 我们 每天的需要。 Thanks for taking care of our daily needs.

qiú nǐ kuānshù wǒmen suǒ fàn de zuì

求你 宽恕 我们所犯的罪。 Please forgive the sins we have committed.

qiú nǐ cìgěi wǒmen shènglíng

求你 赐给 我们 圣灵。 Please give us holy spirit.

qiú nǐ zhùfú nǐ de bǎixìng

求你 祝福 你的 百姓。 Please bless your people.

qiú nǐ zhǐyǐn wǒmen

求你 指引 我们。 Please guide us.

qiú nǐ bāngzhù wǒmen zài shǔlíng shàng jìnbù

求你 帮助 我们在 属灵 上 进步。 Please help us to progress spiritually.

qiú nǐ gǎndòng de xīn

求你 感动 (name) 的心。 Please move (name's) heart.

qiú nǐ bāngzhù wǒmen péiyǎng jiānqiángde xìnxīn

求你 帮助 我们 培养 坚强地 信心。 Please help us to cultivate strong faith.

xiànshēn gěi shàngdì shì shénme yìsī

献身 给 上帝 是 什麼 意思? What does it mean to dedicate ourselves to God?

How to close a prayer

fèng yēsū jīdū de míng dǎogào āmen

奉 耶稣基督的名 祷告、阿们。 In Jesus Christ's name we pray, Amen.

xiàng duì wèi
向 / 对 / 为

Formula: S + xiàng / duì / wèi + noun + V-O

xiàng

向: to, towards (physical direction)

wǒmen xiàng yēhéhuá dǎogào

我们 向 耶和华 祷告。 We pray to Jehovah.

wǒ xiàng lín xiānsheng chuándào

我 向 林 先生 传道。 I preach to Mr. Lin.

xiàng qián zǒu

向 前 走。 Walk forwards. (literally: "towards forward walk.")

qǐng xiàng wǒ jiěshì

请 向 我 解释。 Please explain (it) to me.

wèi

为: because of, for

yēsū wèi wǒmen xīshēng shēngmìng

耶稣 为 我们 牺牲 生命。 Jesus sacrificed (his) life for us.

zhǎnglǎo wèi huìzhòng fúwù

长老 为 会众 服务。 Elders work for the congregation.

rén yīnggāi wèi tā dǎogào

人 应该 为 他 祷告。 People should pray for him.

liúdìxiong wèi wǒmen dǎogào

刘 弟兄 为 我们 祷告。 Brother Liu prays for us.

yuēhàn wèi tā zuò jiànzhèng

“约翰 为 他 做 见证，” John bore witness for him. (Jo 1:15)

wǒ chángcháng wèi nǐmen gǎnxiè shàngdì

“我 常常 为 你们 感谢 上帝，” I always thank God for you, (1 Cor. 1:4)

duì

对: to, towards, of, at

wǒmen duì yēhéhuá dǎogào

我们 对 耶和华 祷告。 We pray to Jehovah.

zhè shì xiǎohóng duì wǒ shuōde

这是 小红 对 我 说的。 Xiǎohóng said this to me.

jīngwén duì wǒmen lái shuō yǒu shénme yìsī

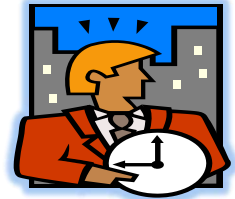
经文 对 我们 来说 有 什么 意思？ What does the scripture mean to us?



NOTE: It is NEVER correct to say “dǎogào tā” for “pray to him”, or “shuō tā”, for “speak to him”. These are very common errors for native English-speaking students of Mandarin to make. English speakers say, “I talk to him,” but Chinese speakers say, “I to him talk.”

háiméi yǒu
还没 (有) “Still haven’t” or “Hasn’t yet”

S + háiméi (yǒu) + VO.



“She hasn’t come yet,” or “I still haven’t done that...” In Chinese, these expressions are very similar grammatically to our expressions in English. Using Mandarin, “háiméi (yǒu)” expresses the thought of not yet completing an action.

When expressing this thought, sometimes people drop the “yǒu” in “háiméiyǒu”. They sometimes just say “háiméi”. For example, these two sentences mean the same thing: “Tā hái méiyǒu shàng jùhuì,” and “Tā hái méi shàng jùhuì.” Both of these examples mean: “She/He still hasn’t attended a meeting.”

The biggest difference between the Chinese and English way to say “yet” is that English puts “yet” at the end of the sentence. Chinese puts “yet” or “still” (háiméi) before the verb, never at the end of the sentence.

Examples:

- wǒ hái méiyǒu dúguò shèngjīng
 1. 我还没有读过圣经*。 I haven’t read the Bible yet.
- wǒ zhàngfu hái méiyǒu huíjiā
 2. 我丈夫还没有回家。 My husband hasn’t come home yet.
- wǒ yéye hái méiyǒu xué yīngwén
 3. 我爷爷还没有学英文。 My grandfather hasn’t learned English yet.

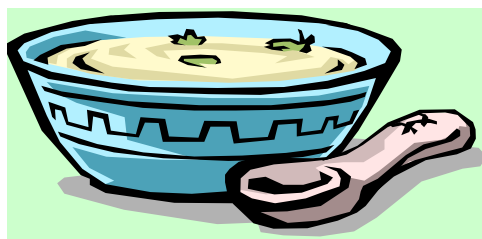
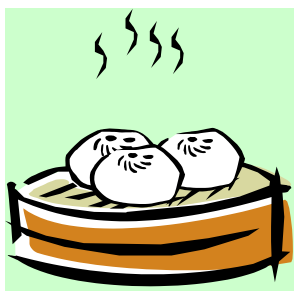


*See the next page for an explanation of “guò”.

Subject	háiméiyǒu	Verb	Object.
wǒ sūnzi 我 孙子	háiméiyǒu 还 没有	gǎnxiè 感谢	wǒ 我。
	háiméiyǒu 还 没有		
	háiméiyǒu 还 没有		
	háiméiyǒu 还 没有		
	háiméiyǒu 还 没有		
	háiméiyǒu 还 没有		
	háiméiyǒu 还 没有		

Ex: My grandson still hasn’t thanked me. **Wǒ sūnzi hái méiyǒu gǎnxiè wǒ.**

Biographical Database



zuò

做 (verb) to do

le

了 (grammar particle) Signifies completed action when placed right after the verb.

guò

过 (grammar particle) When placed right after the verb, means: “Have you ever had this experience before?”

1. Have you eaten Chinese food before?

nǐ chīguò zhōngguó cài ma
你吃过 中国菜 吗？

wǒ chīguò le

Answers: 我吃过了。 (Yes, I have eaten it before.)

wǒ méi chīguò

我没吃过。 (No, I have not eaten it before.)

2. Have you been to China before?

nǐ qù guò zhōngguó ma
你去过 中国 吗？

wǒ qùguò le

Answers: 我去过了。 (I have been there before.)

wǒ méi qùguò

我没去过。 (I have not been there before.)

3. Have you done your homework?

nǐ zuò le nǐ de zuòyè ma
你做了你的作业 吗？

wǒ zuòhǎo le

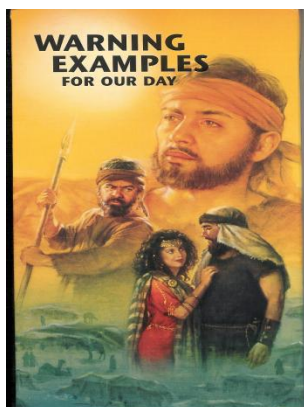
Answers: 我做好了。 (I did it.)

wǒ hái méi zuò hǎo

我还没做好。 (I haven't done it yet.)

wúwàng qiánchēzhījiàn
毋 望 前 车 之 鉴

(Three part dialogue taken from the drama available in Mandarin.)



nǐ rènwéi nèixiē nǚrén zěnmeyàng
Bila: 你 认为 那些 女人 怎么样?

shénme nǚrén
Yamin: 什么 女人?

dāngrán shì zhǐ móyā nǚzǐ lā nǐ yīdìng
Bila: 当然 是 指 摩押 女子 啦! 你 一定
tīngguò le
听 过 了。

tīngshuō zuìjìn jǐge wǎnshàng yǒu wàizú
Yamin: 听说 最近 几个 晚上 有 外族
nǚzǐ dào wǒmen de yíng dì lái kěshì wǒ hái
女子 到 我们 的 营地 来。可是 我 还
méiyǒu jiànguò tāmen
没有 见 过 她 们。

wǒmen yě méiyǒu jiànguò
Saodi: 我们 也 没有 见 过。

guò hái méiyǒu dào
*Please notice the examples of “过”, “还 没有 ” and “到 ” in this dialogue.

GRAMMAR CHARTS

For homework: Use flashcards to memorize new vocabulary. In one of your journal entries, write a practice prayer using new phrases & vocabulary from this lesson. In another journal entry, talk about some things you have had the experience of doing before. (Like going to a foreign country, attending an international convention, etc.) Fill out all the grammar charts completely using vocabulary from this and past lessons.

How to say the Subject has Done Something for Someone Else

Subject	wèi	Noun	Verb	Noun
Yēsū	wèi	rénlèi	xīshēng	shēngmìng.
	wèi			
	wèi			
	wèi			
	wèi			
	wèi			

Ex. Jesus sacrificed his life for mankind. Yēsū wèi rénlèi xīshēng shēngmìng.

How to say Subject is doing Something Towards the Object

Subject	xiàng	Object	VO
Wǒmen	xiàng	biérén	chuándào.
	xiàng		
	xiàng		
	xiàng		
	xiàng		
	xiàng		

Ex. Wǒmen xiàng biérén chuándào. We preach to others.

How to ask if the Subject has Done Something Before

Subject	verb	guò	object	ma?
Nǐ	kàn	guò	shèngjīng	ma?
		guò		
		guò		
		guò		
		guò		
		guò		
		guò		

Ex: Have you read the Bible before? Nǐ kànguò Shèngjīng ma?

How to Express that the Subject has Done Something Before

Subject	verb	guò	le
Wǒ	kàn	guò	le.
		guò	le.
		guò	le.
		guò	le.
		guò	le.
		guò	le.
		guò	le.

Ex: I have read it before. Wǒ kànguò le.

This week's vocabulary list is designed to be used along with the Hokey Pokey in Chinese, if possible.

shēntǐ
身体 body
gǔtóu
骨头 bone
xuè
血 blood
tóu
头 head
tóunǎo
头脑 brain
tóufa
头发 hair
liǎn
脸 face
kǒu
口 mouth
yǎnjīng
眼睛 eye
shétóu
舌头 tongue
bízi
鼻子 nose
ěrduo
耳朵 ear
tuǐ
腿 leg
jiǎo
脚 foot
jiǎogēn
脚跟 heel
bìbǎng
臂膀 arm
shǒu
手 hand
shǒuzhǐ
手指 finger
pìgu
屁股 bottom
xīgài
膝盖 knee

zìjǐ
自己 self
yáo
摇 to shake
zhuàn
转 to turn
tuō
脱 to take off
xiézi
鞋子 shoes
chuān
穿 to put on, to wear (clothing)
yīfu
衣服 clothes
dài
戴 to wear (glasses, hat, gloves)
yǎnjīng
眼镜 eyeglasses
chènshān
衬衫 a shirt, blouse
xīzhuāng
西装 a suit
lǐngdài
领带 a tie
qúnzi
裙子 a skirt
lián yī qún
连一裙 a dress
kùzi
裤子 pants
wàitào
外套 a coat
zuǒ
左 left
yòu
右 right
xuǎnzé
选择 to choose
duānzhuāng dé tǐ
端装 得体 modest (clothes)



cháng
长 long
duǎn
短 short
jǐn
紧 tight
shūfu
舒服 comfortable
shìdàngde
适当的 proper

Some useful sentences and phrases

As part of your homework, act out these phrases while saying them aloud.

wǒ méi dài yǎnjìng

我 没 带 眼 镜 。 *I am not wearing glasses.*

wǒ shēntǐ bù shūfu

我 身 体 不 舒 服 。 *I am not feeling well.*

chuān shàng yīfu

穿 上 衣 服 *to put on clothes* / 穿 上 鞋 子 *to put on shoes*

chuān shàng xié zi

chuān bú shàng

穿 不 上 *to be too small to wear*

tuō xià yīfu

脱 (下) 衣 服 *to take off clothes* / 脱 (下) 鞋 *to take off shoes*

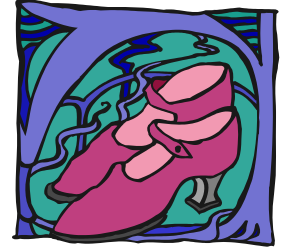
tuō xià xié

búyòng tuōxié

“ 不 用 脱 鞋 。” “*You don't need to take your shoes off.*”

dǎ pìgu

打 屁 股 *to spank (someone's bottom)*



Scriptural examples of new vocabulary

Underline words in the below scriptures that you recognize and look up any words you don't recognize.

Genesis 3:15

nǚrén de miáoyì bì dǎsuì nǐ de tóu nǐ bì yǎoshāng tā de jiǎogēn
“ 女 人 的 苗 裔 必 打 碎 你 的 头 ， 你 必 咬 伤 他 的 脚 跟 。”

Exodus 4:11

yēhéhuá duì tā shuō shéi zào rén de kǒu ne
耶 和 华 对 他 说 ： “ 谁 造 人 的 口 呢 ？”

Psalms 89:13

nǐ yǒu dànéng de bìbǎng nǐ de shǒu shí zài yǒu lì nǐ de yòushǒu gāojǔ
“ 你 有 大 能 的 臂 膀 ， 你 的 手 实 在 有 力 ， 你 的 右 手 高 举 。”

Ezekiel 12:12

tā bì méngzhù liǎn yǎnjīng kàn bú jiàn dì
“ 他 必 蒙 住 脸 ， 眼 睛 看 不 见 地 。”

Mark 7:33

yēsū sīxià bǎ tā cóng qúnzhòng lǐ dàidào yīpáng yòng shǒuzhǐ tàn tā de ěrduo
“ 耶 稣 私 下 把 他 从 群 众 里 带 到 一 旁 ， 用 手 指 探 他 的 耳 朵 ，
yòu tǔtuòmò mǒ tā de shéitóu
又 吐 唾 沫 抹 他 的 舌 头 ... ”

Philippians 4:7

zhè zhǒng píng'ān jièzhe jīdū yēsū kěyǐ shǒuhù nǐmen de nèixīn hé tóunǎo
“ 这 种 平 安 藉 著 基 督 耶 稣 ， 可 以 守 护 你 们 的 内 心 和 头 脑 。”

xīlà yǔ shèngjīng rénwù
希腊语 圣经 人物

shǐtú bǎoluó 使徒 保罗 : the apostle Paul	yuēhàn 约翰 : John	mǎliyà 马利亚: Mary	jiālùèdeyóudà 加略的犹大: Judas Iscariot	yǎgè 雅各: James
shījìnzhěyuēhàn 施浸者约翰 : John the baptizer	mǎdà 马大: Martha	lāsālù 拉撒路: Lasarus	tí mó tài 提摩太: Timothy	bǐ dé 彼得: Peter

zuì gèng
最 and 更 : Most and More

Grammar formula: (Adjective + de +) Subject + gèng/zuì + adjective.

Grammar formula: Subject + gèng/zuì + aux. verb + verb-object.

When we are describing something, we often use comparisons. We may want to say,

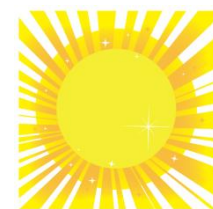
"Cold weather is good, warm weather is better, hot weather is the best."

In Mandarin, we use "gèng" and "zuì" to express these ideas. For example:

lěng de tiānqì hǎo nuǎn de tiānqì gèng hǎo rè de tiānqì zuì hǎo
"冷的天气好、暖的天气更好、热的天气最好。"

"Cold weather is good, warm weather is better, hot weather is the best."

qiūtiān shūfu chūntiān gèng shūfu xiàtiān zuì shūfu
"秋天舒服、春天更舒服、夏天最舒服。":



"Autumn is comfortable, spring is more comfortable, and summer is most comfortable."

"Zuì" and "gèng" can also modify auxiliary verbs. For example:

wǒ xǐhuan shùmù wǒ gèng xǐhuan huār wǒ zuì xǐhuan dòngwù
"我喜欢树木。我更喜欢花儿。我最喜欢动物。"
"I like trees. I like flowers better. I like animals the best."

Subject	adjective,	noun	gèng/zuì	adjective
Rén	cōngmíng,	tiānshǐ	gèng	cōngmíng.

Ex: People are intelligent, angels are more intelligent. Rén cōngmíng, tiānshǐ gèng cōngmíng.

suǒyǒude dōu 所有的 and 都 : HOW TO SAY "ALL"

Suǒyǒude + noun + dōu + VO. OR Subject + dōu + (bu) aux. verb + VO.

Suǒyǒude means "all". It must be used to modify a **noun**. An example of this in English is "all dogs bark". When **suǒyǒude** is used at the beginning of a sentence, **dōu** should be inserted before the **verb** in the same sentence. For example: "**Suǒyǒude** dogs **dōu** bark," means "all dogs bark."

Using **suǒyǒude** puts emphasis on the **noun** that it precedes. If the emphasis is merely on the **verb** of the sentence, then **suǒyǒude** can be dropped from the sentence and **dōu** can be used alone in front of the verb. The difference is the same as if we said, "All people should worship Jehovah," or "People should all worship Jehovah."

Dōu and **suǒyǒude** both mean "all", but **dōu** has more uses than **suǒyǒude**. **Dōu** can also mean "both", referring to two of something. It can also mean "not all" (**bùdōu**) or "neither" (**dōubù**) when used before a verb in the negative.

For example:

- nà liǎnggè xiānsheng dōu xué shèngjīng
1. 那 两个 先生 都 学 圣经 。 *Those two gentlemen both study the Bible.*
- suǒyǒude rén dōu yīnggāi chóngbài yēhéhuá
2. 所有的人 都 应该 崇拜 耶和华 。 *All people should worship Jehovah.*
- lǐ dìxiōng gēn wáng dìxiōng dōubù xǐhuan kāfēi
3. 李 弟兄 跟 王 弟兄 都 不 喜欢 咖啡 。 *Neither Br. Li nor Br. Wang like coffee.*
- yēhéhuá jiànzhèngrén dōubù yīnggāi xīdú
4. 耶和华 见证人 都 不 应该 吸毒 。 *No Jehovah's Witnesses should take drugs.*
- suǒyǒu de rén dōu xūyào shàngdì de wángguó
5. 所有的人 都 需要 上帝 的 王国 。 *(Supply translation)* _____
- yēhéhuá ài suǒyǒu rén
6. 耶和华 爱 所有 人 。 *(Supply translation)* _____
- zhè bùshì yuēsè de érzi yēsū ma tā de fùqīn wǒmen bùdōu rènshi ma
7. " 这 不是 约瑟 的 儿子 耶稣 吗 ? 他 的 父亲 我们 不 都 认识 吗 ? " *John 6:42*



A COMMON MISTAKE MADE BY STUDENTS OF CHINESE:

INCORRECT: **Dōu** rén ài Yēhéhuá. *All people love Jehovah. (Why is this incorrect? Dōu cannot be used to modify a noun.)*

CORRECT: **Suǒyǒu de** rén **dōu** ài Yēhéhuá. *All people love Jehovah. Suǒyǒu de is used to modify nouns; Dōu is for verbs.*

Yígè Shèngjīng Yánjiū: A Bible Study

Examples of how to use “suǒyǒude” (all), “dōu” (both or all), and “yǒude” (some)

Homework: Translate this dialogue into English. Memorize vocabulary using flashcards & fill out all grammar charts using new and old vocabulary. Write daily journal entries in Chinese, trying to incorporate new vocabulary whenever possible.

yù píng mǎ lì yà suǒ yǒu de hǎo rén dōu huì shàng tiān táng ma
玉平： 马利亚、所有的好人都会上天堂吗？

mǎ lì yà zhè shì gè hěn hǎo de wèn tí shèng jīng shuō yǒu de rén huì dào tiān shàng
马利亚：这是个很好的问题！圣经说有的人会到天上
qù qí tā rén huì zhù zài dì shàng de lè yuán lǐ
去。其他人会住在地上的乐园里。

wèi shén me ne
玉平： 为什麼呢？

yīn wéi dì qiú shì rén lèi de jiā yuán ér qiě dào tiān shàng qù de rén dōu huì
马利亚：因为地球是人类的家园。而且、到天上去的人都会
zài tiān shàng zuò tè bié de gōng zuò tā men huì gēn yē sū yì qǐ
在天上做特别的工作。他们会跟耶稣一起
zuò wáng nà me rèn hé wáng dōu tǒng zhì gōng mǐn duì bù duì
作王*。那麼、任何王都统治公民、对不对？

duì
玉平： 对。

suǒ yǐ dà bù fēn de rén huì zhù zài dì shàng de lè yuán lǐ tā men huì zuò
马利亚：所以、大部份的人会住在地上的乐园里。他们会作
shàng dì de wáng guó de gōng mǐn
上帝的王国的公民。

hǎo wǒ míng bai xiè xie nǐ mǎ lì yà
玉平： 好、我明白！谢谢你、马利亚！

New vocabulary in dialogue:

yǒu de
有的: some
jiā yuán
家园: home
tè bié
特别: special
nà me
那麼: so then
tǒng zhì
统治: to rule

qí tā de
其他的: other
ér qiě
而且: moreover
yì qǐ
一起: together
rèn hé
任何: any
gōng mǐn
公民: citizens



dà bù fēn
大部份: most of

*Notice that the verb “to be” in the phrase “to be king” is “zuò”, not “shì”. “Zuò” is another way to say “is” or “to be”. In this case, saying “shì” (to be) would be incorrect. More examples are: to be a wife: zuò qīzi, to be a son: zuò érzi, to be a student: zuò xuéshēng, to be a citizen: zuò gōngmín, to be a pioneer: zuò xiānqū, to be a circuit overseer: zuò fēnqū jiāndū, etc.

yě háiyou gēn hé yǔ
也, 还有 / 跟, 和, & 与: How to say “also” or “and”

Yě 也 : also (Formula: Noun + yě + V-O. –or– Noun + yě + aux. vb. + V-O.)

Adverb; used before verbs *only*. For example: yěyǒu: also have, yěshì: also is, yěméiyǒu: also doesn't have, yěyào: also wants, etc. **Yě cannot be used before nouns.** It is very rarely used to begin sentences. For example: How would you say: “He goes, too,” ? **COMMON MISTAKE:** “Yě tā qù.” instead, say: “Tā yě qù.”

Háiyǒu 还有: also (Formula: Háiyǒu + sentence. –or– Háiyǒu + phrase.)

“Háiyǒu” is used to start sentences as a connective, like “Furthermore,” or “Also,”. “Háiyǒu” is also used in questions: Háiyǒu ma?: Anything else? Háiyǒu shéi?: Who else? Háiyǒu ne?: Anything else? Háiyǒu tā?: And him, too?

Gēn 跟, Hé 和, and Yǔ 与: and, with (Formula: A gēn B / A hé B / A yǔ B)

Gēn and hé are both used to join nouns. They mean the same thing. For example, Jack hé Jill (or) carrots, peas, gēn potatoes. **Gēn, hé, and yǔ cannot be used to begin sentences.** Often where we would use “and” in English, a Chinese person would just start a new sentence. (NOTE: In the WT, often one complex English question is broken up into two simpler Chinese questions for this reason.)

yēhéhuá gēn yēsū dōu ài rénlèi
*耶和华 跟 耶稣 都 爱人类。

Jehovah and Jesus both love mankind.

wǒ wǒ māma hé wǒ zhàngfu dōu yào chuándào
*我、我妈妈、和我丈夫 都要传道。

I, my mother, and my husband all want to preach.



Grammar chart: As part of your homework, fill this in completely.

Subject	yě (also)	aux. verb	verb	object.
Wǒ	yě	xiǎng	xuéxí	Shèngjīng.
	yě			
	yě			
	yě			
	yě			
	yě			

Example sentence: I also want to study the Bible. Wǒ yě xiǎng xuéxí Shèngjīng.

fángzi 房子 house (MW 栋)	dòng	chī 吃 to eat (verb)
fángjiān 房间 room (MW 间)	jiān	hē 喝 to drink (verb)
mén 门 door, gate (MW 扇)	shàn	dōngxi 东西 thing
yǐzi 椅子 chair (MW 把)	bǎ	chāojíshìchǎng 超级市场 supermarket
zhuōzi 桌子 table (MW 张)	zhāng	cānguǎn 餐馆 restaurant (MW 家)
diànnǎo 电脑 computer (MW 部)	bù	xiǎofèi 小费 tip (at restaurant)
diànhuà 电话 telephone (MW 部)	bù	kuàizi 筷子 chopsticks (MW 双)
shǒu jī 手机 cell phone		píng 瓶 bottle (also a MW)
shōuyīnjī 收音机 radio (MW 台)	tái	píjiǔ 啤酒 beer /
ěrjī 耳机 headphones (MW 副)	fù	hóngjiǔ 红酒 red wine
bǐ 笔 pen (MW 只)	zhī	bēi 杯 cup (also a MW)
zhǐ 纸 paper (MW 张)	zhāng	shuǐ 水 water
xuéxiào 学校 school		kāishuǐ 开水 boiled water
dàxué 大学 university		qìshuǐ 汽水 soda
lǎoshī 老师 teacher		chá 茶 tea /
yīyuàn 医院 hospital		kāfēi 咖啡 coffee
fāshāo 发烧 to have a fever		wǎn 碗 bowl /
shēngbìng 生病 to get sick (VO)		tāng 汤 soup
gǎnmào 感冒 the common cold		cài 菜 vegetables; dish
		yào 药 medicine
		lā dùzi 拉肚子 to have diarrhea (VO)
		tóutòng 头痛 to have a headache

Some useful phrases and sentences

yī bēi shuǐ
一杯水 a cup of water

yī bēi chá
一杯茶 a cup of tea

yī píng pījiǔ
一瓶啤酒 a bottle of beer

yī wǎn fàn
一碗饭 a bowl of rice

yī wǎn tāng
一碗汤 a bowl of soup

shàng dàxué
上大学 to attend university

shàngxué
上学 to go to school

fàngxué
放学 finish school (for the day)

zhōngguó cānguǎn
中国餐馆 Chinese restaurant

qǐng shāoděng
请稍等。 Please wait.

qǐng gěi wǒ yī shuāng kuàizi
请给我一双筷子。 Please give me a pair of chopsticks.

nǐ yào hē shénme dōngxi
你要喝什么东西？ What do you want to drink?

nǐ yào chī shénme dōngxi
你要吃什么东西？ What do you want to eat?

wǒ gǎnmào le
我感冒了。 I have a cold.

chī yào
吃药 to take medicine (VO)

qù yīyuàn
去医院 to go to the hospital

kàn yīshēng
看医生 to see the doctor

kàn diànyǐng
看电影 to watch a movie

kàn diànshì
看电视 to watch TV

tīng shōuyīnjī
听收音机 to listen to the radio



Dramatic Acting

zuìchū de shé 最初的蛇 the original serpent	dàlóng 大龙 the great dragon	sādàn 撒但 Satan	móguǐ 魔鬼 the Devil
dàchāngjī 大娼妓 the harlot	dàbābīlún 大巴比伦 Babylon the Great	xiéling 邪灵 demons	dìshàng lièwáng 地上列王 the kings of the earth

shǐ jiào lìng ràng
使, 叫, 令, & 让
“to make” or “to cause to be”

Grammar formula: S + **shǐ** + noun + **adjective**.

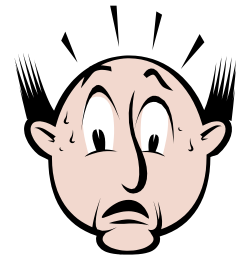
Grammar formula: S + **shǐ** + noun + zuo + **position / occupation / state of being**.

“Shǐ” 使 is a very commonly used verb in our Chinese literature. It is used like the English word “make”, in the sense of “this makes me happy”, or “the truth makes us rejoice,” etc.

The word “shǐ” is **not** used in the sense of the word “create”. For example, the sentence “He made a beautiful garden in Eden,” in Chinese would **not** use the word “shǐ”. Instead, this sentence would use the word “zào” which is short for “chuàngzào” (to create).

The other words listed, “jiào”, “lìng”, and “ràng” are very common, spoken ways to say things like “to make” or “to cause to be (adj.)”. They all mean the **same thing** and have the **same** grammar patterns.

- tāmen ràng wǒ de érzi bù gāoxìng
1. “他们 让 我的儿子不 高兴。” They make my son unhappy.
- nǐ lìng wǒ hěn jīngyà
2. “你 令 我很惊讶！” You shocked me! (*literally: You make me very shocked!*)
- tā jiào wǒ hěn lèi
3. “他 叫 我很累！” He tires me out! (*literally: He makes me very tired!*)
- wǒ yào zài zuìhòu de rìzi 叫 tā fùhuó yuēhàn fúyīn
4. “我要在 最后 的日子 叫 他 复活。” 约翰福音 6:44



Homework: Translate the following scriptures into English. Make flashcards & practice this week’s vocabulary & new presentation with a partner, if possible. Write journal entries using this week’s vocabulary to describe some of your habits; i.e. Do you drink tea or coffee in the morning? What day of the week do you go to the supermarket?, etc. Fill out the grammar chart fully.

马太福音 Mǎtài fúyīn 28:19

suǒyǐ nǐmen yào qù shǐ suǒyǒu guózú de rén zuò wǒ de méntú
“所以 你们 要去、**使** 所有 国族 的人 做 我的 门徒...。”

马可福音 Mǎkě fúyīn 1:40

zhǐyào nǐ yuànyì jiù néng shǐ wǒ jiéjìng
“只要 你 愿意 ... 就 能 **使** 我 洁净。”

COLORS: YÁNSÈ

black	white	grey	red	pink	purple	blue	green	yellow	orange
黑色 hēisè	白色 báisè	灰色 huīsè	红色 hóngsè	粉红色 fěnhóngsè	紫色 zǐsè	蓝色 lánsè	绿色 lǜsè	黄色 huángsè	橘色 jú sè

*hēirén: black person *báirén: white person

- wǒ xǐhuan lǜsè de chē
1. 我 喜欢 绿色的车。 I like green cars.
 - wǒ tàitai xǐhuan hóngsè de huār
 2. 我 太太 喜欢 红色的花儿。 My wife likes red flowers.
 - wǒ de péngyou zuì xǐhuan de yánsè shì fěnhóngsè
 3. 我的 朋友 最喜欢的颜色是 粉红色。(Translate)

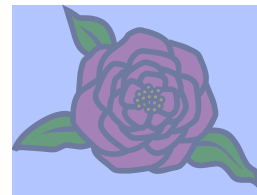
Skit: “Please Come In!” : “Qǐng jìn!”

nǐ yǒu shénme shì

A: 你 有 什 么 事 ? (What matter are you here about?)

wǒ yào gěi nín yī zhāng yāoqǐng dān

B: 我 要 给 您 一 张 邀 请 单 。



xièxie qǐngjìn qǐngjìn

A: 谢 谢 ! 请 进 、 请 进 ! (Thanks! Please come in!)

B: (start taking your shoes off, as is customary in China.)

bié tuōxié bié tuōxié qǐng zuò

A: 别 脱 鞋 , 别 脱 鞋 ! 请 坐 。 (Don't take off your shoes! Please sit down!)

xièxie

B: 谢 谢 !

nǐ yào hē shuǐ ma

A: 你 要 喝 水 吗 ? (Do you want to drink some water?)

búyòng xièxie

B: 不 用 , 谢 谢 ! (No, thank you)

bié kèqì wàimian hǎo rè

A: 别 客 气 ! 外 面 好 热 ! (Don't be polite! It's very hot outside!)

kěyǐ xièxie

B: 可 以 、 谢 谢 ! (OK, thanks!)

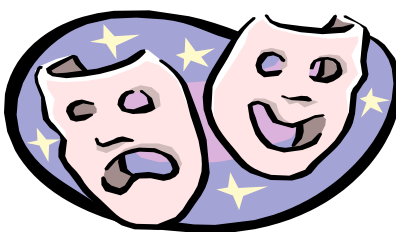
xíng qǐng děng yīxià wǒ qù ná

A: 行 ! 请 等 一 下 。 我 去 拿 。 (OK, please wait a second! I'll go get it.)

* Cultural note: It is polite in Chinese culture to say “no” when first offered food or drink, even if you want what is offered. To say “yes” too quickly might seem greedy to Chinese persons who are not used to American culture.

yòu zài
又 and 再 : AGAIN

Formulas: Subject – zài – verb (object) or Subject – yòu – verb (object)



We all know how to say “zài jiàn” for goodbye. “Zài jiàn” really means: “See you again”. Zài means “again (in the future)”. Someone may say to us: “Huānyíng nǐ zàilái!” which means “You are welcome to come again (in the future)!” Or “Nǐ bù xūyào zàilái,” which means “You don’t need to come again (in the future).” Or “Qǐng zàishuō yībiàn,” which means “Please say that again.” The word “zài” has everything to do with the future and nothing to do with the past. (“Zài” has other meanings, but we are just focusing on one aspect of it at this time.)

The word “yòu” on the other hand has to do with the past and the present. It means “again (you’ve done it before, now you are doing it AGAIN)”. Someone may say, “Yòu shì tā,” meaning, “It’s him again.” (This indicates disapproval. He was already here several times in the past, and now he’s back.) Yòu can have a negative connotation depending on how it is said.

“Yòu” has some other usages, too. It can also commonly mean “and” or “also”. For example: “yòu gāo yòu dà” means “tall and big.”

Grammar Chart

Subject	yòu	adjective	yòu	adjective.
Wǒ zhàngfu	yòu	cōngmíng	yòu	shuài.
	yòu		yòu	
	yòu		yòu	

Example: My husband is smart and handsome. Wǒ zhàngfu yòu cōngmíng yòu shuài.



New Presentation: “Education” (modified version of a KM introduction)

jīntiān zhōngguó rén hěn zhòngshì jiàoyù fùmǔ xīwàng ér nǚ jìnrù míngxiào
“今天 中国人 很 重视 教育。父母 希望 儿女 进入 名校，

niánqīng rén yě xīwàng kǎoshàng dàxué nǐ rèn wéi nǎ yī zhǒng jiàoyù zuì
年轻人 也 希望 考上 大学。你 认为 哪 一 种 教育 最

hǎo ne

好 呢？” Carefully listen to their response, and then read 2 Timothy 3:16, 17.

“Chinese people today highly value education. Parents hope that children will get into famous schools, and young people hope to test into universities. Which education do you think is the best?” (Listen to householder’s response, and then read 2 Timothy 3:16, 17)

Additional Homework:

Translate the following sentences into English on a separate piece of paper and turn in to teacher.

nǐ yòu lái le

1. 你 又 来 了 ！

tā de sūnzi xǐhuan zhōngguó cānguǎn

5. 她 的 孙 子 喜 欢 中 国 餐 馆 。

wǒ huì zài lái

2. 我 会 再 来 。



tā kuài kuài de chīfàn

6. 他 快 快 地 吃 饭 。

tā qīzi huàn le gǎnmào

3. 他 妻 子 患 了 感 冒 。

wǒ de nǚ’ér míngtiān huì shàng dàxué

7. 我 的 女 儿 明 天 会 上 大 学 。

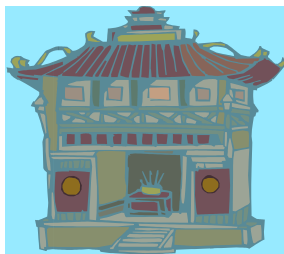
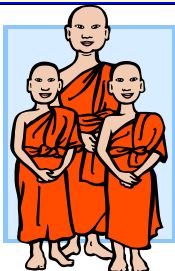
wǒ jīntiān xiàwǔ sān diǎn qù yīyuàn

4. 我 今 天 下 午 三 点 去 医 院 。

wǒ lǎoshī ràng wǒ hěn gāoxìng

8. 我 老 师 让 我 很 高 兴 。

pūtōnghuà dì kè
普通话 第12课 EASTERN RELIGION



dōngfāng
东方 *The East*

xīfāng
西方 *The West*

fójiào
佛教 *Buddhism*

púsà
菩萨 *the Buddha*

kǒngzǐ
孔子 *Confucius*

lúnhuí
轮回 *reincarnation*

zhéxué
哲学 *philosophy*

chuántǒng
传统 *tradition*

dǎsuàn
打算 *to plan, intend to*

suàn
算 *to regard as, count as*

jìnhuà
进化 *to evolve*

chuàngzào
创造 *to create*

huárén
华人 *Chinese person*

wàiguórén
外国人 *foreigner*

bàishén
拜神 *"to worship the gods"*

míxìn
迷信 *superstition*

huíjiào
回教 *Islam*

yìndùjiào
印度教 *Hinduism*

dàojiào
道教 *Taoism*

shéndàojiào
神道教 *Shintoism*

yǔzhòude
宇宙的 *Universal*

zhìgāozhǔzǎi
至高主宰 *Sovereign*

cúnzài
存在 *to exist*

zhèngjù
证据 *evidence*

biǎomíng
表明 *to show*

mòshēng
陌生 *strange*

hélǐ
合理 *reasonable*

tánhuà
谈话 *to converse, chat*

tǐhuì
体会 *to know from experience*

chóngbài zǔxiān
崇拜 祖先 *ancestor worship*

1. Adding “-zhě” to the end of a verb makes that verb into a noun. “Chóngbài” (to worship) becomes “chóngbàizhě” (worshipper). “Chuàngzào” (to create) becomes “chuàngzàozhě” (Creator). “Wúshénlùn” (atheism) becomes “wúshénlùnzhě” (atheist).

2. Adding “-tú” to the end of a word means a disciple or believer of that thing. “Jīdūtú” means “Christian”. “Fójiàotú” means “Buddhist”. “Tiānzhǔjiàotú” means “Catholic”, etc.

3. Adding “-lùn” to the end of “jìnhuà” (to evolve) makes it a noun: “jìnhuàlùn”, the theory of evolution.

4. “Wúshén” literally means “no god”, so “wúshénlùn” means “the theory of no god”, or “atheism”.

5. Adding “-jiā” to the end of a word can make the word describe an expert at that thing. Kēxuéjiā: scientist, Yìshùjiā: artist, Kǎogǔxuéjiā: archaeologist, etc.

- | | | |
|----|-----|-------------|
| | zhě | |
| 1. | 者 | -er |
| 2. | 徒 | disciple of |
| 3. | 论 | theory of |
| 4. | 无 | not, un- |
| 5. | 家 | an expert |

nǐ yào gēn wǒmen yìqǐ qù jùhuì ma
“你要跟我们一起去聚会吗？”
“Would you like to come with us to the meeting?”

kěyǐ
可以 : *yes, I can*

xíng
行 : *ok*

bùxíng
不行 : *No*

suíbiàn nǐ
随便你 : *it's up to you*

wǒ qù bùliǎo
我去不了 : *I can't go*

méi bànfa
没办法 : *there's no way (I can do it)*

wúsuǒwèi
无所谓 : *it doesn't matter one way or the other*



nǐ yào wǒ lái jiē nǐ ma
“你要我来接你吗？”

“Would you like me to come pick you up?”

They may say: “I don't want to take up too much of your time.”
or “It's too much trouble for you!”

wǒ búyào dānwù nǐ de shíjiān wǒ búyào máfan nǐ
我 不要 耽误 你的 时间！ or 我 不要 麻烦 你！

(It is polite in Chinese culture to say no at times, even if the person does want to go.)

We could say: “I really am very happy to take you to the meeting!”

wǒ zhēnde hěn lèyì dài nǐ qù jùhuì a
我 真的 很乐意 带你 去 聚会 阿！

They may also say: “Ok! What time are you coming?”

xíng nǐ jǐ diǎnlái ne
行！你几点来呢？

or: “No need, we have our own car.”

búyòng wǒmen yǒu zìjǐ de chē
不用、我们 有 自己的 车。

lèyì
乐意 : **happy to, willing**

búyòng
不用 : **no need**

máfan
麻烦 : **trouble**



pǔtōnghuà dì kè shíjiān
普通话 * 第 13 课 * 时间 *TIME*



tiāntiān 天天 daily	yǐqián zhīqián 以前 / 之前 before	shíjiān 时间 time
hòutiān 后天 day after tomorrow	yǐhòu zhīhòu 以后 / 之后 after	shíqī 时期 period in time
qùnián 去年 last year	tōngcháng 通常 usually	bùjiǔ 不久 soon
jīnnián 今年 this year	zǒngshì 总是 always	zǎo 早 early
míngnián 明年 next year	zuìjìn 最近 recently	wǎn 晚 late (time)
shànggèyuè 上个月 last month	yǐjīng 已经 already	chí 迟 late (arrival)
zhègèyuè 这个月 this month	tūrán 突然 suddenly	huā 花 to spend (\$/time)
xiàgèyuè 下个月 next month	céngjīng 曾经 previously	měicì 每次 every time
xiàndài 现代 modern	mǎshàng 马上 immediately	shàngcì 上次 last time
gǔdài 古代 ancient	hòulái 后来 afterwards	xiàcì 下次 next time
xiànzài 现在 now	cóng dào 从 ... 到 ... from... to...	jìxù 继续 to continue
guòqu 过去 past	cónglái méiyǒu 从来 没有 never before	kāishǐ 开始 to start
wèilái jiānglái 未来 / 将来 future	lishǐ 历史 history	jiéshù 结束 to end
qiántú 前途 future	réngrán 仍然 yet, still	guò 过 to live (life)
yǒushíhòu 有时候 sometimes	dìyī shìjì 第一世纪 1st Century	gōngyuánqián 公元前 B.C.E.
měinián 每年 every year	tóu 头 the first (of something)	gōngyuán 公元 C.E.
yī jiǔ yī sì nián 一九一四年 1914	gōngyuánqián nián 公元前 607 年 : 607 BCE	gōngyuán nián 公元 33 年 : 33 CE

The Fruitage of the Spirit: Shènglíng de guǒshí

ài xīn 爱心	xīlè 喜乐	héping 和平	jiānrěn 坚忍	réncí 仁慈	liángshàn 良善	xìnxīn 信心	wēnhé 温和	zìzhì 自制
<i>love</i>	<i>joy</i>	<i>peace</i>	<i>long-suffering</i>	<i>kindness</i>	<i>goodness</i>	<i>faith</i>	<i>mildness</i>	<i>self-control</i>

MAKING COMPARISONS: “is like” or “is similar to”

hǎoxiàng rú
好像 / 如

Subject + hǎoxiàng 好像 + noun + yíyàng 一样 + adjective. OR

Subject + hǎoxiàng 好像 + noun + yíyàng 一样 + auxiliary verb + VO. OR

Subject + gēn hé 跟 or 和 + noun + yíyàng 一样 + adjective. (see example # 4)

- tā hǎoxiàng bǐdé yíyàng yǒnggǎn
1. 他好像彼得一样勇敢。 He is as courageous as Peter.
- wǒ xiàng wǒ bàba yíyàng ài shuōhuà
2. 我像我爸爸一样爱说话。 _____
- wǒ de míngzi shì rú xuě
3. 我的名字是如雪。 My name is “like snow”.
- tā gēn tā māma yíyàng ǎi
4. 她跟她妈妈一样矮。 She is as short as her mom.



***IMPORTANT NOTE:** “Xiàng” is a shortened form of “hǎoxiàng”; they mean the same thing.

“Hǎoxiàng” and “rú” in Chinese are used much like how the words “like” and “similarly to” are used in English. These words are used when you are comparing one thing to another thing. We do this a lot in life, and especially when using illustrations. “Hǎoxiàng” is used in everyday speech. “Rú” is used more in books or in people’s names. “Rú” is used in the Bible frequently, so it is good to be familiar with it. As example #4 shows, it is possible to drop the “hǎoxiàng” in some comparisons and simply use the word “gēn”... and then “yíyàng”.

Here are two scriptural examples of how these words can be used:

mǎtàifúyīn

马太福音 3:16

Look! Heaven opened, John saw God's spirit like dove come down on Jesus' body.”

kànna tiānkāi le yuēhàn kànjiàn shàngdìde líng hǎoxiàng gēzi jiàng zài yēsū shēnshàng
看哪！天开了、约翰看见上帝的灵好像鸽子降在耶稣身上。

yǐsàiyǎshū

以赛亚书 48:18b

“This way, your peace then* like river water, your righteousness then* vast like ocean waves.”

zhèyàng nǐ de píng'ān jiù rú héshuǐ nǐ de yìxíng jiù hào rú hǎilàng
这样、你的平安就如河水、你的义行就浩如海浪。

***See section about “rúguǒ and jiù” in this lesson to learn more about the use of “then” (jiù).**

How to Say "When" or "While": "de shíhòu"

There are two ways to say "when" in Chinese: one is used when asking a question. The other is used in statements. For example:

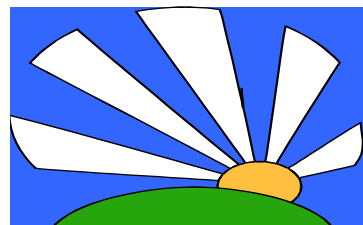
- wǒmen shénme shíhòu qù jùhuì
1. 我们 什么 时候 去 聚会? *When are we going to the meeting?*
- tā zài zhōngguó de shíhòu xué zhōngwén
2. 她在 中国 的 时候 学 中文。 *While she was in China, she learned Chinese.*
- měicì chuándào de shíhòu dōu bìxū dǎogào
3. “每次 传道 的 时候，都 必须 祷告。”
- shàngcì bài fāng nín de shíhòu nín bú zài jiā suǒyǐ wǒmen liú xià zhè zhāng
4. “上次 拜访 您 的 时候，您 不在 家、所以 我们 留下 这 张
chuándān gěi nín nín xiǎng zhīdào nà yīgè wèntí de dá'àn ne
传单 给 您。您 想 知道 那 一个 问题 的 答案 呢？” (12/10 KM)

Homework: Translate #3 & #4 into English & turn in. Listen to Ecc. 3:1-9 in Chinese.

zhāng xiǎohóng de zǎoshang 张 小 红 的 早 上

(Designed to be used with Total Physical Response II method)

jīntiān zǎoshang xiǎohóng hěn lèi tā màn màn de
今天 早上 小红 很累。她 慢慢 地
chuān yīfu ránhòu chī zǎofàn tā zǒngshì zài chī
穿 衣服、然后 吃 早饭。她 总是 在 吃
zǎofàn de shíhòu hē chá tā yě hěn xǐhuan kàn
早饭 的 时候 喝 茶。她 也 很 喜欢 看



tiāntiān kǎochá shèngjīng tā dú tiāntiān kǎochá shèngjīng yǐhòu kàn
“天天 考查 圣经”。她 读 “天天 考查 圣经” 以后、看
shèngjīng zài zǎoshang bā diǎn bàn de shíhòu tā māma tūrán duì tā shuō
圣经。在 早上 八 点 半 的 时候、她 妈妈 突然 对 她 说：

jīntiān shì xīngqīliù wǒmen jīntiān yào yìqǐ qù chuándào xiǎohóng duì tā
“今天 是 星期六！我们 今天 要 一起 去 传道！” 小红 对 她
māma shuō wǒ jìde xièxiē nǐ
妈妈 说：“我 记得！谢谢 你。”

tā men shàngwǔ shídiǎn kāishǐ chuándào tā men chuándào de shíhòu xùfǎng
她们 上午 十 点 开始 传道。她们 传道 的 时候 续 访
le jǐge gǎnxìngqù de rén tā men fēnfā le hěnduō zázhì tā men xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn
了 几个 感 兴趣 的 人。她们 分 发 了 很 多 杂 志。她们 下 午 两 点
bàn jiéshù tā men huíjiā de shíhòu tèbié gāoxìng
半 结 束。她们 回 家 的 时候 特 别 高 兴。

The Many Uses of " Shàng " and " Xià "

You will see these words a lot in Chinese. They are not just position words, they are also **verbs**. We cannot cover all possible uses of "shàng" and "xià", but these are some common terms:

shàngbān 上班 to go to work	shàngchē 上车 to get in car	shànglóu 上楼 to go upstairs
xiàbān 下班 to get off work	xiàchē 下车 to get out of car	xiàlóu 下楼 to go downstairs
shàngxué 上学 to go to school	shànglái 上来 to come up	shàng tiāntáng 上 天堂 go to heaven*
fàngxué 放学 to get off school	xiàlái 下来 to come down	xià dìyù 下 地狱 to go down to hell*
xiàxuě 下雪 to snow	xiàyǔ 下雨 to rain	shàng jùhuì 上 聚会 to attend meeting
xià juéxīn 下 决心 to decide, to make a decision		xià jiélùn 下 结论 to come to a conclusion

* Christendom's expressions. You may hear householders use these terms.

Biographical Database: Everyday Expressions

máfan nǐ

1. Say "麻烦 你..." then ask your fellow student to do something for you, like read a scripture from their pinyin Bible. Equivalent to saying, "Please,"

answer: *Please use Chinese and keep your answer simple.*

2. nǐ jǐ diǎn fàngxué xiàbān
你几点 (放学、下班) ?

What time do you get off (school, work,)

answer: wǒ (TIME OF DAY) (放学、下班)。

I won't get off until (time of day).

3. zhègè dōngxi jǐ kuài qián
这个 (东西) 几块钱? (if item under \$10)

How much does this thing cost? (point to it)

sample answer: \$.30 (sānmáo)

4. zhègè dōngxi duōshǎo qián
这个 (东西) 多少钱? (if item over \$10)

How much does this thing cost? (point to it)

sample answer: \$101.00 (yī bǎi líng yī kuài qián)



How to use a Line of Reasoning : “If....., then.....”

rúguǒ jiù
“如果 ... , 就...”

rúguǒ dehuà jiù
如果 + subject + VO (的话), ... subject / pronoun / noun + 就 + VO.

When we are reasoning with someone, we may say, “If ... (something happens), then...(there will be a certain result).” For example, “If a person exercises everyday, then their health will improve.” Or, “If we read the Bible daily, then we will have a happier life.”

A very commonly made mistake by English speakers of Mandarin has to do with where “then” goes in the second half of this type of sentence. In English we say: “...then we will draw closer to God,” but in Chinese it is said differently: “...we then will draw closer to God.” So, the biggest difference in this grammar structure from English is that “then” comes AFTER the noun, not before it.

For example:

rúguǒ wǒ shēngbìng dehuà wǒ jiù bù lái le
1. 如果 我 生病 的话、我 就 不来了。
If I get sick, then I won't come.

rúguǒ wǒ xūyào bāngzhù jiù lái zhǎo nǐ
2. 如果 我 需要 帮助 就 来 找 你。
If I need help, then (I will) come find you.



The following is a scriptural example of this grammar pattern:

yǎgèshū
雅各书 4:17

“Therefore, if a person knows how to do right things, but not go do, then is his sin.”
suǒyǐ yàoshì rén zhīdao zěnmē zuò duì de shì què búqù zuò jiù shì tā de zuì le
所以, 要是 人 知道 怎麼 做 对 的 事, 却 不 去 做, 就 是 他 的 罪 了。

*NOTE #1 : A synonym for “rúguǒ” is “yàoshì”. These two words are used the same way.

**NOTE #2: “Jiù” has many meanings other than “then”. It can also be used to emphasize verbs.
“Jiùshì” can mean “exactly is”.

shàngdì jiùshì ài

A good example of this is 1 John 4:8: “上帝 就是 爱。”

HOMEWORK: Memorize vocabulary using flashcards. Try to use new words & grammar patterns in your daily journal entries. Listen to Galatians 5:22, 23 in Chinese twice everyday. Use new vocabulary from today's lesson as well as words from past lessons to fully fill out the grammar charts on the following pages.

Grammar Charts: Please fill out as part of your homework

How to Say Two Things or Persons are the Same

Subject	hǎoxiàng	noun/pronoun	yíyàng	adjective.
Wǒ nǎinai	hǎoxiàng	tā nǎinai	yíyàng	rènzhēn.

Example: My Grandmother is as diligent as her Grandmother is.

Wǒ nǎinai hǎoxiàng tā nǎinai yíyàng rènzhēn.

Subject	gēn	noun/pronoun	yíyàng	adjective.
Wǒ bàba	gēn	wǒ érzi	yíyàng	gāo.

Example: My father and my son are the same height. Wǒ bàba gēn wǒ érzi yíyàng gāo.

How to Say “While...” or “When...” in a Statement

Subject	VO	de shíhòu	VO.
Wǒ	chuándào	de shíhòu	dǎogào.

Example: When I preach, I pray. Wǒ chuándào de shíhòu dǎogào.

How to say “If..., then...” in a line of reasoning

Rúguǒ	Subject	Verb	Object	de huà,	Noun	jiù	Verb	Object.
Rúguǒ	rén	fúcóng	yēhéhuá	de huà,	yēhéhuá	jiù	bāngzhù	tāmen.
Rúguǒ				de huà,		jiù		
Rúguǒ				de huà,		jiù		
Rúguǒ				de huà,		jiù		
Rúguǒ				de huà,		jiù		
Rúguǒ				de huà,		jiù		
Rúguǒ				de huà,		jiù		
Rúguǒ				de huà,		jiù		
Rúguǒ				de huà,		jiù		
Rúguǒ				de huà,		jiù		

Ex: Rúguǒ rén fúcóng Yēhéhuá de huà, Yēhéhuá jiù bāngzhù tāmen.

If people obey Jehovah, then Jehovah helps them.

Lesson 14 Shèngjīng Yánjiū *Bible Study*

tǎolùn
讨论 *to discuss; a discussion*

zhǔnbèi hǎo
准备好 *to prepare well*

huàxiàlai
划下来 *to underline*

duànluò
段落 *paragraph*

yǒudàolǐ
“有道理” *“makes sense”*

zhǐ
只 *only, merely (goes before verb)*

wèntíjiǎ
问题甲 *question A*

wèntíyǐ
问题乙 *question B*

dāngrán
当然 *of course*

kěndìng
肯定 *definitely*

dàibiǎo
代表 *to represent, symbolize*

yùgào
预告 *to prophesy (verb)*

yìngyàn
应验 *to fulfill*

yùyán
预言 *a prophecy (noun)*

shíxiàn
实现 *to bring about*

yīngxǔ
应许 *promise (verb & noun)*

bǐyù
比喻 *illustration*

biǎomíng
表明 *to show*

dàodǐ
到底 *in the end; actually*

dá'àn : *noun, “an answer”.*

huòzhě
或者 *or*

dìfang
地方 *place*

chātú
插图 *picture*

fùlán
附栏 *box; chart*

fāngfǎ fāngshì
方法 / 方式 *a method, way*

zhèyàng nàiyàng
这样 / 那样 *like this/that*

xiǎoxīn
小心 *to be careful*

lèisì
类似 *similar*

yuángù
缘故 *(a) reason*

yǒu gēnjù
有根据 *have a basis for*

juéde
觉得 *to feel or think*

tóngyì
同意 *to agree*

tóng bùtóng
同 / 不同 *same / different*

wàngjì
忘记 *to forget*

jìde bú jìde
记得 / 不记得 *to remember / forget*

kěnéng bù kěnéng
可能 / 不可能 *possible / impossible*

péiyǎng
培养 *to cultivate (qualities)*

tèzhì
特质 *qualities*

nèiróng
内容 *content (of a book, movie, etc)*

huídá : *verb, “to answer”.*



Homework: Bible Study Related Sentences

Please translate these sentences into English & turn in next week. Supplement your phrase book with any sentences that you find useful for Bible studies. You could also write them into your Bible Teach book.

- wǒmen shàngcì tāolùn le yēsū shì shéi wǒ bú jìde
1. 我们 上次 讨论了耶稣是谁。 2. 我不记得。
- zhègè dōngxi dàibiǎo shénme nà gè dìfang zài nǎli
3. 这个 东西 代表 什么？ 4. 那个 地方 在 哪里？
- nǐ juéde zhè shì kěnéng de ma nǐ tóngyì ma
5. 你 觉得 这 是 可能 的 吗？ 6. 你 同意 吗？
- nǎ gè wèntí nǐ zuì gǎnxìngqù ne wǒmen yào péiyǎng xìnxīn
7. 哪个 问题 你 最 感兴趣 呢？ 8. 我们 要 培养 信心。
- máfan nǐ huàxiàlai wèntíjiǎ de dá'àn wǒ zhǐyǒu yī běn shū
9. 麻烦 你 划下来 问题甲 的 答案。 10. 我 只有 一 本 书。
- nǐ juéde yēsū zhèyàng zuò duì bù duì ? nǐ jìde ma
11. 你 觉得 耶稣 这样 做 对 不对？ 12. 你 记得 吗？
- yēhéhuá xǐhuan nà yàng de shìqing ma yǒu kěnéng
13. 耶和 华 喜欢 那样 的 事情 吗？ 14. 有 可能 。
- dànyǐlǐ yùgào wǒmen de rìzi huì yǒu shénme shì fāshēng ?
15. 但以 理 预告 我们 的 日子 会 有 什么 事 发生？
- máfan nǐ dú dì èrshí duàn nǐ jǐ diǎn fāngbiàn xuéxí ?
16. 麻烦 你 读 第二 十 段。 17. 你 几 点 方 便 学 习？
- nǐ rènwéi zěnmeyàng ? nǐ xiāngxìn zhè jiàn shì ma
18. 你 认为 怎 么 样？ 19. 你 相信 这 件 事 吗？
- nǐ duì zhè diǎn yǒu shénme kànfǎ bù kěnéng
20. 你 对 这 点 有 什么 看 法？ 21. 不 可能 。
- nǐ duì zhè jiàn shì yǒu shénme gǎnjué hěn yǒu dào lǐ
22. 你 对 这 件 事 有 什么 感 觉？ 23. 很 有 道 理！
- nǐ yǒuméiyǒu xiǎngguò , yēsū dàodǐ shì shéi ne
24. 你 有 没 有 想 过 , 耶稣 到底 是 谁 呢？
- yēsū de fùqīn shì shéi dì èr duàn yǒu shénme bǐyù
25. 耶稣 的 父亲 是 谁？ 26. 第二 段 有 什么 比 喻？
- nǐ zhǔnbèi de hěn hǎo ! zhè jié jīngwén shì shénme yìsi
27. 你 准备 得 很 好！ 28. 这 节 经 文 是 什 么 意 思？

NOTE: the measure word for "事" or "事情" is "件"

How to Contrast Two Different Activities or Persons

Noun + **bǐ** + noun + **adjective**.

VO + **bǐ** + VO + **adjective**.

Jehovah is greater than Jesus. People are smarter than animals. How do we say sentences like these in Chinese? We need to use the word “**bǐ**”, “**compared to**”.

For example:

yēhéhuá bǐ yēsū dà
耶和華 比 耶穌 大。

rén bǐ dòngwù cōngmíng
人 比 動物 聰明 。

pǎobù bǐ kànshū nán
跑步 比 看書 難。

Jehovah is greater than Jesus. People are smarter than animals. Running is harder than reading.

What if you simply want to say a simple sentence with only one noun, like “People are smarter”? In that case, you could simply say:

“**Rén bǐjiào cōngmíng.**” (Noun + **bǐjiào** + adjective.)

Bǐ and bǐjiào are only used in sentences where you are contrasting two different things.

You would not use “**bǐ**” in a sentence where you are saying that two things are the same. If you were comparing two things and saying they are *the same*, instead of “**bǐ**” say “**gēn**” or “**hé**” and then use “**yíyàng**” before the adjective. For example:

“**Lǐ dìxiōng gēn Wáng dìxiōng yíyàng gāo.**” (Noun + **gēn** + noun + **yíyàng** + adjective.)

“Brother Li and Brother Wang are the same height.”

1 Corinthians 1:25

yīnwéi shàngdì zěnyàng yúchǔn yě bǐ rén yǒu zhìhuì
“因为 上帝 怎样 愚蠢 也 比 人 有 智慧，
shàngdì zěnyàng ruǎnrùo yě bǐ rén jiānqiáng
上帝 怎样 软弱 也 比 人 坚强 。”

Matthew 6: 25b

shēngmìng búshì bǐ shíwù zhòngyào ma
生命 不是 比 食物 重要 吗？
shēntǐ búshì bǐ yīshang zhòngyào ma
身体 不是 比 衣裳 重要 吗？”



John 14:28b

yīnwéi fùqīn shì bǐ wǒ dà de
“因为 父亲 是 比 我 大的。”

Additional Vocabulary in the above Scriptures:

yúchǔn jiānqiáng shíwù zhòngyào yīshang fùqīn
愚蠢 : foolish 坚强 : strong 食物 : food 重要 : important 衣裳 : clothing 父亲 : Father

zhèngzài

正在 : “in the process of doing something”

Formula: Subject + zhèngzài + action verb-Object.

The word “zhèngzài” in Chinese is one way of expressing that **an action is still in progress**. The equivalent in English is “-ing”. For example:

“He **is eating**,” = Tā zhèngzài chīfàn.

“She **is preaching**,” = Tā zhèngzài chuándào.



In these cases, “-ing” at the end of the verb means that the action is taking place right now. “Zhèngzài” has exactly the same connotation. The only difference is that “zhèngzài” goes before the verb, unlike “-ing” which goes after the verb in English.

“Zhèngzài” is often shortened to “zài”. For example: " Tā zài chīfàn, " means, “He **is eating**.” It is very common when speaking to drop the “zhèng” and just say “zài”.

Sometimes, “zhèngzài” is shortened to “zhèng”. For example: " Tā zhèng chīfàn, " also means “He **is eating**.” These variations all mean the same thing: *the action is happening now and is not finished yet.*

zhe

著 : “In the process of doing something”

Formula: Subject + action verb + zhe + Object.

The word “zhe” goes in the same place as “-ing” does in English: right after the action verb. It means the same thing as “zhèngzài” does: **an action is in the process of happening now**. For example:

“She **is looking** at you.” = Tā kànzhe nǐ.

“We **are waiting** for him.” = Wǒmen děngzhe tā.

The two (zhèngzài and zhe) can even be used together in one sentence:

“She **is looking** at you.” = Tā zài kànzhe nǐ.



Both “zhèngzài” and “zhe” are the equivalents of the English words “is (verb)ing”, so when translating English into Chinese, there is no need to use “shì” 是 (to be).

1 John 2:17:

zhègè shìjiè hé shìjiè de yùwàng zhèngzài xiāoshī
“ 这个 世界 和 世界的 欲望 正在 消失、

” This world and world's desires are fading away,

zūnxíng shàngdì zhīyì de rén què yǒngyuǎn chángcún
遵 行 上帝 旨意 的人 却 永远 长 存。 ”

do God's will person certainly forever remain.”

Dramatic Acting Skit : “Not At Home” 不在家

nǐ zhǎo shéi
A: 你找谁? (Who are you looking for?)

zhāng xiǎojiě zài jiā ma
B: 张小姐在家吗? (Is Miss Zhang at home?)



tā bú zài tā jīntiān huì sāndiǎn huíjiā
A: 她不在。她今天会三点回家。
(She's not home. She will come home at 3:00.)

nà wǒ huì sāndiǎn zhīhòu zàilái hǎo ma
B: 那, 我会三点之后再回来, 好吗?
(Then I'll come back after 3:00, ok?)

hǎo
A: 好。(Ok.)

xièxie zàijiàn
B: 谢谢, 再见!

How to Make a Suggestion or Command: ba 吧

Formula: Subject + VO + ba.

What if you want to suggest to someone, “Let’s go,” or “Let’s eat,”. How would you say that in Mandarin? It’s easy! Just put **ba** at the end of the sentence.

wǒmen chīfàn ba

我们吃饭吧! = “Let’s eat!”

wǒmen kāishǐ xuéxí ba

我们开始学习吧! = “Let’s start studying!”

zánmen shàngxué ba

咱们上学吧。= “Let’s go to school.”

zánmen shàngbān ba

咱们上班吧。= “Let’s go to work.”



Note: In the north of China, people often say “zánmen” instead of “wǒmen”. “Zánmen” has a more limited meaning than “wǒmen”. “Zánmen” means “we” referring *only to the group of people presently with the speaker*. The term “wǒmen” is broader in meaning. It is used just like “we” or “us” is used in English. It could refer to the entire human race or just you and someone else. People from the South of China or Taiwan may not know this word.

Grammar Charts: Please fill out for homework & turn in

How to Politely Make a Suggestion

Subject	auxiliary verb	VO	ba.
Zánmen	kāishǐ	dú jīngwén	ba.

Example: Let's start reading the scripture. Zánmen kāishǐ dú jīngwén ba.

How to Express that an Action is Happening Now

Subject	zhèngzài	VO.
Tāmen	zhèngzài	chīfàn.

Example: They are eating. Tāmen zhèngzài chīfàn.

How to Highlight the Differences between Things or Persons

Subject	bǐ	noun/pronoun	adjective.
Yēhéhuá	bǐ	rén	cōngmíng.

Example: Jehovah is smarter than people. Yēhéhuá bǐ rén cōngmíng.

Pǔtōnghuà dì 15 kè : Mòqī *The Time of the End*

zuìhòuderìzǐ
最后的日子 *the last days*

zhànzhēng
战争 *war*

liánghuāng
粮荒 *famine*

dìzhèn
地震 *earthquake*

wēnyì
瘟疫 *pestilence*

zhōngzhǐ
中止 *to end*

shuāilǎo
衰老 *to grow old*

chóudí
仇敌 *enemy*

shārén
杀人 *to murder*

zìshā
自杀 *to commit suicide*

zìsī
自私 *selfish*

gāo'ào
高傲 *arrogant*

tānlán
贪婪 *greedy*

bùlǐmào
不礼貌 *to be impolite*

bùlǐhuì
不理睬 *to ignore*

shòubùliǎo
受不了 *can't take it*

zěnmē bàn
怎么办? *What can be done?*

yōulǜ
忧虑 *anxiety*

yālì
压力 *stress*

fánnǎo
烦恼 *vexation*

xīnkǔ
辛苦 *difficult*

shòukǔ
受苦 *to suffer*

dānxīn
担心 *to worry*

hòuhuǐ
后悔 *to regret*

kū
哭 *to cry*

shēngqì
生气 *to be angry*

hèn
恨 *to hate*

rěnnài
忍耐 *to endure*

fāshēng
发生 *to happen*

bìmiǎn
避免 *to avoid*

bāokuò
包括 *to include*

miáoshù
描述 *to describe*

juéding
决定 *to decide*

zhēngxiàng
征象 *signs*

jiānyù
监狱 *prison*

dàibǔ
逮捕 *to arrest*

wēixiǎn
危险 *danger*

chéngfá
惩罚 *to punish*

pòhài
迫害 *to persecute, persecution*

pínqióngde
贫穷的 *poor*

fùyǒude
富有的 *rich*

fǔbài
腐败 *corrupt/corruption*

wùzhìzhǔyì
物质主义 *materialism*

fācái
发财 *to get rich*

jiéguǒ
结果 *result; outcome*

yuányīn
原因 *cause*

fǎnyìng
反应 *reaction, response*

lěngdàn
冷淡 *apathy*

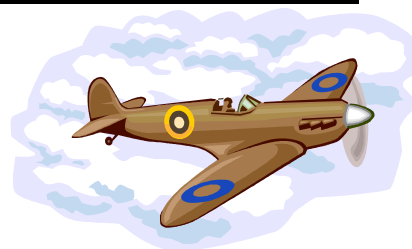
mǎnzú
满足 *to be content*

tiānzāi
天灾 *natural disaster*

zāinàn
灾难 *disaster*



Dramatic Acting Skit: "The Last Days"
As part of your homework, translate this skit into English



nǐ juéde shàngdì guānxīn shòukǔ de rén ma
A: 你 觉得 上帝 关心 受苦 的人 吗?

wǒ bù zhīdao
B: 我 不 知道 。

nàme nǐ yǒu méiyǒu tīngguò xiànjīn shì zuìhòuderìzǐ ne
A: 那么、你 有 没有 听过、现今 是 "最后的日子 呢" ?

méiyǒu zuìhòuderìzǐ shì shénme
B: 没有 。最后的日子 是 什么 ?

yēsū zài mǎtàifúyīn gào sù wǒmen tā shuō mínzú yào gōngdǎ mínzú
A: 耶稣 在 马太福音 24:7 告诉 我们 。他 说 : " 民族 要 攻打 民族
wángguó yào gōngdǎ wángguó yī chù jiē yī chù yǒu liáng huāng hé dìzhèn
王国 要 攻打 王国 、一 处 接 一 处 有 粮 荒 和 地震 。 "

nǐ juéde xiànjīn de shìjiè shì zhèyàng de ma
你 觉得 现今 的 世界 是 这样 的 吗?

shìde
B: 是 的 !

wǒ tóngyì xiànjīn yǒu hěnduō zhànzhēng dìzhèn hé liáng huāng shìbúshì
A: 我 同意 。现今 有 很多 战争 、地震 、和 粮 荒 , 是 不是 ?

shìde
B: 是 的 。

nàme yēsū shuō zuìhòuderìzǐ yě yǒu qítā de zhēngxiàng qǐng liúyì dì jié
A: 那么, 耶稣 说 最后的日子 也 有 其他 的 征 象 。请 留 意 第 14 节:

zhè wángguó de hǎoxiāoxī huì chuánbiàn pǔtiānxià duì suǒyǒu guózú zuò
" 这 王国 的 好 消息 会 传 遍 普 天 下, 对 所 有 国 族 作
jiànzhèng dàoshí zhōngjié jiù huì lái dào 。" bùjiǔ shàngdì huì chéng fá èrén
见 证 ; 到 时 终 结 就 会 来 到 。" 不 久 上 帝 会 惩 罚 恶 人 。

tā yě huì zhěngjiù chóngbài tā de rén nǐ xiǎng zhīdao duō yīdiǎn ma
他 也 会 拯 救 崇 拜 他 的 人 。你 想 知 道 多 一 点 吗 ?

xiǎng qǐng jìn qǐng jìn
B: 想 ! 请 进, 请 进!

How to Say “got” or “by” : Bèi 被

Formula: Subject + (méi) + bèi + (noun) + VO + (le).

“Bèi” is a very important verb to understand in Chinese. It is used in the New World Translation 1,950 times. It has some different uses, but we will only discuss one of them here. Depending on the context, “bèi” for the most part, implies something bad happening. For example, getting killed, put in jail, beaten, etc. But, “bèi” can also be used to describe good things.

If the verb-object complex (VO) at the end of the sentence ends with “^{le}了”, then we know that the action is completed. “Bèi” is most often used together with “le” to describe past events. Without “le” at the end, it can be used to refer to something that did not happen (see #5) or something that has not yet happened.

(Note: The examples below are not proper English, but they correspond perfectly to this Chinese grammar pattern.)

1. He got arrested. tā bèi dàibǔ le
他 被 逮捕 了。

2. He got killed. tā bèi shā sǐ le
他 被 杀 死 了。

3. She got disfellowshipped. tā bèi huìzhòng kāichú le
她 被 会 众 开 除 了。

4. That matter got discovered by her. nài jiàn shì bèi tā fāxiàn le
那 件 事 被 她 发 现 了。

5. He did not get beaten by the KGB. tā méi bèi dǎ
他 没 被 KGB 打。



Subject	bèi	VO	le.
Sādàn	bèi	huǐmiè	le.
	bèi		le.
	bèi		le.
	bèi		le.
	bèi		le.
	bèi		le.
	bèi		le.

Example: Satan got destroyed. Sādàn bèi huǐmiè le.

Total Physical Response: New VO Complexes and Adverbs

shuìjiào 睡觉 : <i>to sleep</i>	xiě zì 写字: <i>to write (words)</i>	kāixīnde 开心地 : <i>happily</i>
qǐchuáng 起床 : <i>to get up</i>	kāichē 开车 : <i>to drive (a car)</i>	bùkāixīnde 不开心地 : <i>unhappily</i>

tā de érzi bù kāixīn de qǐchuáng
Example: 他的儿子不开心地起床。 *His son unhappily got out of bed.*

越来越 Yuè lái yuè... : More and more....

Formula: S – yuèláiyuè - adjective.

Today, work is more and more stressful.

xiànzài gōngzuò yālì yuèláiyuè dà

1. 现在 工作 压力 越来越 大。

This world is getting more and more wicked.

zhègè shìjiè yuèláiyuè huài

2. 这个 世界 越来越 坏。



yēlimǐshū tāmen yuèláiyuè xié'è duì wǒ háobù lǐhuì zhè shì yēhéhuá shuō de

3. 耶利米书 9:3 : ‘他们 越来越 邪恶、对我 毫不 理会。’ 这是 耶和 华 说的。

Please translate Jeremiah 9:3: _____

Presentation from May 2010 Our Kingdom Ministry, page 8:

xǔduō rén dōu juéde shēnghuó de yālì yuèláiyuè dà nǐ yǒu méiyǒu zhè zhǒng gǎnjué
许多人都觉得生活的压力越来越大。你有没有这种感觉？

Many people feel that life is getting more and more stressful. Do you feel this way?

Some examples of how to use “yuèláiyuè”:

yuèláiyuè máng

越来越 忙 : *more and more busy*

yuèláiyuè kuài

越来越 快 : *faster and faster*

yuèláiyuè rènzhēn

越来越 认真 : *more and more diligent*

yuèláiyuè hǎo

越来越 好 : *better and better*

yuèláiyuè róngyì

越来越 容易 : *easier and easier*

yuèláiyuè jiǎndān

越来越 简单 : *more and more simple*



BIOGRAPHICAL DATABASE

nín duō dà

1. 您多大？ *How old are you?*
(Used when addressing a person who is older than you)

nǐ cāi ba

Answer: 你猜吧！ *Guess! (or)*

wǒ suì

我 # 岁。 *I am # years old.*



nǐ jǐ suì

2. 你几岁？ *How old are you? (Used when addressing a younger person or child.)*

wǒ suì

Answer: 我 # 岁。 *I am # years old.*

qǐngwèn zěnmē chēnghu nín

3. 请问、怎么称呼您？ *Excuse me, how should I address you?*

Answer: *Say whatever form of address you prefer; first or last name, English or Chinese.*

nǐ shàng nǎ gè huìzhòng

4. 你上哪个会众？ *What congregation do you attend?*

wǒ shàng zhōngwén huìzhòng

Answer: 我上 _____ 中文会众。 *I attend the _____ Chinese cong.*

wēimíngdùn

威明顿：Wilmington

fèichéng

费城：Philadelphia

niǔyuē

纽约：New York

huánghòuqū

皇后区：Queens

bùlǔkèlín

布鲁克林：Brooklyn

màn hā dùn

曼哈顿：Manhattan

nǐ rènshi zhēnlǐ duōjiǔ le

5. 你认识真理多久了？ *How long have you known the truth?*

wǒ yǐjīng rènshi zhēnlǐ nián

Answer: 我已经认识真理 # 年。 *I have known the truth for # years.*

lí jìn yuǎn
Near and Far 离: from 近: close 远: far

How to say where one thing is in relation to another

Grammar Formula: **Place + lí + place + near/far/time/miles.**

This grammar pattern in Chinese is quite different from English, so please study the following sentences carefully. If we were to make English follow the Chinese grammar pattern, a sentence would sound like this: **The Kingdom Hall from here very close.** Here's another example: **The Assembly Hall from your house one hour.**

TIP: Try writing your own English sentences using Chinese grammar patterns. It's a great memory aid!

wángguó jùhuìsuǒ lí zhèr hěn jìn
 1. 王国聚会所离这儿很近。 *The Kingdom Hall is very close to here.*

wángguó jùhuìsuǒ lí nǐ jiā yīgè xiǎoshí
 2. 王国聚会所离你家一个小时。 *The KH is an hour from your house.*

wángguó jùhuìsuǒ lí zhèr èrshí yīnglǐ
 3. 王国聚会所离这儿二十英里。 *The KH is 20 miles from here.*

nǐ jiā lí zhèr yuǎn ma
 4. 你家离这儿远吗? *Is your house far from here?*

dàhuìtáng lí niǔyuē bànge zhōngtóu 。 (translate into English)
 5. 大会堂离纽约半个钟头。

zhōngguó lí měiguó hěn yuǎn 。 (translate into English)
 6. 中国离美国很远。



For homework, please translate the below sentences into English & turn in. Also, memorize all new vocabulary using flashcards and fill in all grammar charts. Write journal entries daily using as much vocabulary from this and past lessons as you can.

bǐ gāo
 1. Tim 比 Sara 高。

nèigè dìxiōng bèi pòhài le
 2. 那个弟兄被迫害了。

chīfàn bǐ kànshū róngyì
 3. 吃饭比看书容易。

yēxū bèi shā sǐ le
 4. 耶稣被杀死了。

rén bǐ dòngwù cōngmíng
 5. 人比动物聪明。

bǐ kuài
 6. Jason 比 Tim 快。

bǐ tián
 7. Sugar 比 lemons 甜。

lí yuǎn
 8. Utah 离 Pennsylvania 远。

liú xiānsheng bǐ tā qīzi hàixiū
 9. 刘先生比他妻子害羞。

tián xiǎojie bǐ tā mèimei rènzhēn
 10. 田小姐比她妹妹认真。

jùhuìsuǒ lí zhèr shíwǔ fēnzhōng
 11. 聚会所离这儿十五分钟。

bǐ yìng
 12. Apples 比 bananas 硬。

tóunǎo bǐ diànnǎo fùzá
 13. 头脑比电脑复杂。

zhèlǐ lí nàlǐ jìn
 14. 这里离那里近。

GRAMMAR CHARTS

How to Say How Far One Place is From Another

Place	lí	place	time or miles
Wǒ jiā	lí	Niǔyuē	liǎng ge xiǎoshí.
	lí		
	lí		
	lí		
	lí		
	lí		
	lí		
	lí		

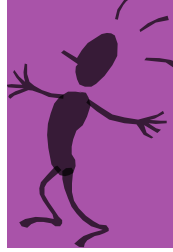
Ex: My house is 2 hours away from New York. Wǒ jiā lí Niǔyuē liǎng ge xiǎoshí.

How to Say Something or Someone is More and More (adjective)

Subject	yuèláiyuè	adjective.
Xié'è de rén	yuèláiyuè	huài.
	yuèláiyuè	
	yuèláiyuè	
	yuèláiyuè	
	yuèláiyuè	
	yuèláiyuè	
	yuèláiyuè	

Ex: Wicked people are advancing from bad to worse. Xié'è de rén yuèláiyuè huài.

Pǔtōnghuà dì 16 kè * Pǐngé * Personality



gǔlì
鼓励 *to encourage*
shānghài
伤害 *to hurt, injure*
gǎnqíng
感情 *emotions*
gǎndòng
感动 *to move (emotionally)*
gǎndào
感到 *to feel*
jīngyà
惊讶 *to be surprised*
xīngfèn
兴奋 *to be excited*
kāixīn
开心 *to be happy*
huīxīn
灰心 *to be discouraged*
jǐnzhāng
紧张 *to be nervous*
jǔsàng
沮丧 *to be depressed*
hàipà
害怕 *to be afraid*
guāi
乖 *to be obedient (child)*

yuànyì
愿意 *to be willing to*
lèyì
乐意 *to be happy to*
kě'ài
可爱 *to be cute, loveable*
kělián
可怜 *to be pitiful*
kěxī
可惜 *(it's a) pity, a shame*
yíhàn
遗憾 *regret, pity; too bad*
nǔlì
努力 *to try hard*
xiūchǐ
羞耻 *to be ashamed*
jídu
嫉妒 *to envy/ to be jealous*
ēncì
恩赐 *a gift (from God)*
lǐwù
礼物 *a gift or present*
xíngwéi
行为 *actions, behavior*
xìngqíng
性情 *temperament*

bié
别 *don't*
guānyú
关于 *about, concerning*
zhǎo
找 *to look for*
zhǎodào
找到 * *to find*
gǎibiàn
改变 *to change*
chéngwéi
成为 *to become*
yǐwéi
以为 *to wrongly assume*
shèfǎ shìtú
设法 / 试图 *to attempt, to try*
jìn
进 *to enter, to come in*
líkāi
离开 *to leave, depart*
língrén
邻人 *neighbor*
jiù pǐngé
旧品格 *old personality*
xīn pǐngé
新品格 *new personality*

*NOTE: Adding “dào” to the end of an action verb expresses **successfully completed action**.
It is used with “le”. Ex: “zhǎodàole”, “kàndàole”, “tīngdàole”

Jehovah's Four Outstanding Qualities Yēhéhuá de sì dà tèzhì

ài xīn
爱心

zhìhuì
智慧



gōngzhèng
公正

lìliang
力量

Adjectives and Modifying Phrases

Subject + shì + yī + MW + (yǒu) + descriptive phrase + de + noun.

mǎtàifúyīn

马太福音 5: 5, 7, 8

“Temperament mild de person has happiness, because they will inherit earth as inheritance.”

xìngqíng wēnhé de rén yǒu fú le yīnwéi tāmen huì chéngshòu dàdì zuòwéi chǎnyè
dì 5 jié 性情 温和 的人 有福了, 因为 他们 会 承受 大地 作为 产业。

“Mercy de person has happiness, because they will get mercy.”

cíbēi derén yǒu fú le yīnwéi tāmen huì déméng cíbēi
dì 7 jié 慈悲 的人 有福了, 因为 他们 会 得蒙 慈悲。

“Heart pure de person has happiness, because they will see God.”

xīndì chúnjié derén yǒu fú le yīnwéi tāmen huì kànjiàn shàngdì
dì 8 jié 心地 纯洁 的人 有福了, 因为 他们 会 看见 上帝。

Unlike English, in Chinese, modifiers always go **before** the words they modify. Almost any words or phrases can become adjectives if you put them in front of the noun you want to describe and then add a “de” between the phrase and the noun. For example, in English we may say, “a woman who loves God”, in Chinese though, it would be said : “love God de woman.” (Ài Shàngdì de nǚrén)

Examples:

sālā shì gè ài shàngdì de rén

1. 撒拉 是 个 爱 上帝 的 人。 *Sarah was a person who loved God.*

yēhéhuá shì cíbēi de shàngdì

2. 耶和華 是 慈悲 的 上帝。 *Jehovah is a merciful God.*

móxī shì yí gè yǒu xìnxīn de rén

3. 摩西 是 一个 有 信心 的 人。 *Moses was a faithful person.*

yēsū shì yí gè yǒu àixīn de rén

4. 耶稣 是 一个 有 爱心 的 人。 *Jesus is a loving person.*

dànyǐlǐ shì yí gè yǒu zhìhuì de rén

5. 但以理 是 一个 有 智慧 的 人。 _____

NOTE: When we need to use a noun (like love, wisdom, or faith) to describe someone or something, we must use “to have” (yǒu) before the noun (see examples 3, 4, and 5). The following sentences are **not correct**. For homework, please write them correctly.

1. “Móxī shì yí gè xìnxīn de rén.”

2. “Yēsū shì yí gè àixīn de rén.”

3. “Dànyǐlǐ shì yí gè zhìhuì de rén.”

bǎ
把 : To Take (*not in a literal sense*)

Subject + bǎ + Object + Verb.

The word “bǎ” is very important in the Chinese language. It appears in the New World Translation 5,130 times. What does it mean? It means “take” in the sense of “I’m going to take this car and sell it!” When we say this in English, we don’t mean that we are planning to physically pick the car up, carry it somewhere, and then sell it. It merely means that we are going to sell the car. “Bǎ” is used in a very similar way. It enables the speaker to put the verb AFTER the object, rather than before it. So, rather than saying “I am going to sell the car,” (Subject- auxiliary verb - verb - object), “bǎ” allows the speaker to say “I am going to *take this car and sell it.*” (Subject - auxiliary verb - bǎ - object - verb) This manner of speaking is used much more frequently in Chinese than it is in English, and it is vital to understand it.

When using “bǎ” as a command, both people should already know *which* object is being referred to. The word “bǎ” is used to speak about specific things. A mother may say to her child, “bǎ shū kànkàn !” (“Read the book!”) The mother assumes that the child knows which book is being referred to when she says this. Notice that the subject of the sentence (nǐ - you) is often dropped in a command or a request.

It has been said that if you can master this grammar point, then you are well on your way to speaking good Chinese! So, work hard to understand and use “bǎ” . Pay special attention to it when you see it used in the publications. As part of your homework, go through a Watchtower article and circle “bǎ” each time you see it. Try to analyze how it is used and how you can use it when speaking Chinese.

Examples:

- yēsū bǎ lāsālù fùhuó le
1. 耶稣把拉撒路复活了。 *Jesus resurrected Lazarus.*
- qǐng bǎ shèngjīng dǎkāi
2. 请把圣经打开。 *Please take (your) Bible and open it.*
- bǎ yīfú fàng zài zhuōzi shàng
3. 把衣服放在桌子上。 *Take the clothes and put them on the table.*
- bǎ wáng tàitai dài dào wángguójùhuìsuǒ ba
4. 把王太太带到王国聚会所吧。 *Take Mrs. Wang to the Kingdom Hall.*
- yuēhàn fúyīn bǎ róngyào guī yú shàngdì ba
5. 约翰福音 9:24: “把荣耀归於上帝吧。” *“Give glory to God.”*



New Verbs: dǎkāi 打开: to open ; fàng 放 : to put; dài 带 : to physically take, to bring

****IMPORTANT**** Often non-native Chinese speakers will use “bǎ” without a main action verb to complete a sentence. For example: “Qǐng bǎ nǐ de Shèngjīng.” This means: “Please take your Bible and...” Saying this will cause people to stare expectantly at you waiting to be told what to do with their Bibles. To correct this problem, simply *add an action verb* at the end of the sentence, like this: “Qǐng bǎ nǐ de Shèngjīng dǎkāi.” : “Please take your Bible and open it.”

Zhǐ : “only”, “merely”, “just”

Formula: Subject + zhǐ + shì + noun + éryǐ * (see footnote).

Formula: Subject + zhǐ + aux. verb + VO.

Formula: Zhǐyǒu + subject + verb (object).

Frequently in speech, we need to emphasize the idea that we “only” need to do this or that. Perhaps we want to tell a Bible student that we should only worship Jehovah, and not other gods. Or maybe we want to emphasize that Jesus was the only man to die faithful to Jehovah. Perhaps a Bible student wants to tell us that they “just” want to stop their study for a few weeks, not stop studying totally. They would likely use “zhǐ” plus the verb “to stop” to express this thought. This is a very important expression to master in order to accurately convey the truth to others. Please study the examples below.

- tā zhǐ yào chóngbài yēhéhuá
1. 他 **只** 要 崇 拜 耶 和 华。 *He only wants to worship Jehovah.*
- bǎoluó zhǐ xiǎng qù zhōngguó
2. 保 罗 **只** 想 去 中 国 。 *Paul only wants to go to China.*
- xiǎohóng zhǐ zǒudào wángguójùhuì suǒ éryǐ
3. 小 红 **只** 走 到 王 国 聚 会 所 而 已。 *Xiaohong only walked to the KJH, that's all.*
- yēsū zhǐshì gè hǎorén éryǐ ma
4. 耶 稣 **只** 是 个 好 人 而 已 吗？ *Was Jesus just a good person, nothing more?*
- zhǐyǒu rén xiàng shàngdì dǎogào dòngwù bú huì
5. **只** 有 人 向 上 帝 祷 告 ， 动 物 不 会。 *Only people pray to God, animals can't.*
- érzi bùzhīdao zhǐyǒu fùqīn zhīdao
6. 儿 子 不 知 道 ， **只** 有 父 亲 知 道。 *The Son doesn't know, only the Father knows.*



*éryǐ: that's all, nothing more (often used in conjunction with “zhǐ”)

But, what if you want to say “not only” in a sentence? Notice this quote from the Bible Teach book for example: “Adam lost this precious life not only for himself but also for his future offspring.”

shīqù wánměi shēngmìng de bùzhǐ shì yàdāng hái bāokuò yàdāng fànzù hòu
“ 失 去 完 美 生 命 的 不 只 是 亚 当 、 还 包 括 亚 当 犯 罪 后
shēng xià de zǐ zǐ sūnsūn
生 下 的 子 子 孙 孙 。”

Here is another example: Mark 9:37 says: “Whoever receives me, receives, not me only, but also him that sent me forth.”

shéi jiēdài wǒ jiù bùzhǐ shì jiēdài wǒ yě shì jiēdài nà chāi wǒ lái de
“ 谁 接 待 我 、 就 不 只 是 接 待 我 、 也 是 接 待 那 差 我 来 的 。”

Practical Conversation: Informal Witnessing

nínhǎo qǐngwèn nín shì huárén ma
A: 您好！请问、您是华人吗？

shìde nǐ zěnmē huì shuō zhōngwén nǐ qùguò zhōngguó ma
B: 是的。诶，你怎么会说中文？你去过中国吗？

méi qùguò wǒ zài měiguó xué pǔtōnghuà
A: 没去过。我在美国学普通话。

nà nǐ wèishénme xué pǔtōnghuà ne
B: 那、你为什么学普通话呢？

wǒ shì lǎoshī wǒ xiǎng bāngzhù huárén míngbai shèngjīng
A: 我是老师。我想帮助华人明白圣经。

ó nǐ shì jīdūtú shìbùshì nà nǐ shuō zhōngwén shuō de hěnhǎo
B: 哦！你是基督徒、是不是？那、你说中文说得很好！

nǎli nǎli qǐngwèn nǐ cóng nǎli lái
A: 哪里、哪里！请问、你从哪里来？

wǒ shì cóng zhōngguó dàlù lái de
B: 我是从中国大陆来的。

shì ma wǒ hěn xiǎng qù dàlù nǐ yǐjīng zài měiguó duōjiǔ le
A: 是吗？我很想去大陆。你已经在美国多久了？

liǎng gè yuè le
B: 两个月了。

nǐ zài měiguó xíguàn ma (xíguàn - accustomed to, used to)
A: 你在美国习惯吗？

hái méiyǒu dànshì wǒ xǐhuan měiguó
B: 还没有。但是、我喜欢美国。

nǐ shàng zhèr fùjìn de dàxué ma
A: 你上这儿附近的大学吗？

duì wǒ shàng dàxué
B: 对。我上 Delaware 大学。

shì ma nà nǐ de zhuānyè shì shénme
A: 是吗？那、你的专业是什麽？

wǒ de zhuānyè shì huàxué
B: 我的专业是化学。

hěnhǎo nǐ juéde xué huàxué nán ma
A: 很好！你觉得学化学难吗？

zài zhèr xué huàxué bǐjiào nán yīnwéi wǒ yīngwén bùhǎo
B: 在这儿学化学比较难因为我英文不好。



xué wàiyǔ zhēnde hēn nán pǔtōnghuà yě hēnnán xué wàiyǔ
A: 学 外语 真的 很难! 普通话 也很难 学! (外语: foreign language)

nǐ jiào shénme míngzi
B: 你 叫 什么 名字?

wǒ jiào _____ nǐ ne
A: 我 叫 _____。 你呢?

wǒ xìng wáng jiào lěilěi
B: 我 姓 王、 叫 蕾蕾。

hěn gāoxìng rènshi nǐ wǒ kěyǐ sònggěi nǐ liǎng běn zhōngwén zázhi ma
A: 很 高兴 认识 你! 我 可以 送 给你 两 本 中文 杂志 吗?

kěyǐ a xièxie
B: 可以 阿! 谢谢!

búyòngxiè wǒxiǎng gěi nǐ wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ nǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì
A: 不用 谢! 我 想 给 你 我的 电话 号码。... 你的 电话 号码 是
duōshǎo ne
多少 呢?

wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ shì
B: 我的 电话 号码 是 (302) 898-8688。

***Cultural tip:** The numbers 6, 8, and 9 are considered “lucky” to some Chinese people. The number 4 is considered “unlucky” by some- much like some people view the number 13 in the US. Many Chinese restaurant owners like to have “lucky” numbers in their phone numbers.

Homework: translate the following sentences into English and turn in.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. 我 不 愿 伤 害 你 的 感 情 。
wǒ búyuàn shānghài nǐ de gǎnqíng | 10. 她 只 愿 意 向 马 利 亚 祷 告 。
tā zhǐ yuànyì xiàng mǎlià yǎodǎo |
| 2. 我 想 鼓 励 你 天 天 看 圣 经 。
wǒ xiǎng gǔlì nǐ tiāntiān kàn shèngjīng | 11. 我 以 为 耶 稣 是 上 帝 。
wǒ yǐwéi yēsū shì shàngdì |
| 3. 你 感 到 兴 奋 吗 ?
nǐ gǎndào xīngfèn ma | 12. 成 为 基 督 徒 的 人 要 培 养 新 品 格 。
chéngwéi jīdūtú de rén yào péiyǎng xīnpǐngé |
| 4. 我 奶 奶 很 沮 丧 。
wǒ nǎinai hěn jǔsàng | 13. 别 害 怕 ! 耶 和 华 乐 意 帮 助 爱 他 的 人 。
bié hàipà yēhéhuá lèyì bāngzhù ài tā de rén |
| 5. 人 改 变 品 格 不 容 易 。
rén gǎibiàn pǐngé bù róngyì | 14. 我 的 邻 人 只 要 给 你 一 个 礼 物 而 已 。
wǒde línrén zhǐyào gěi nǐ yīgè lǐwù éryǐ |
| 6. 你 的 孙 子 很 可 爱 !
nǐ de sūnzi hěn kě'ài | 15. 我 愿 意 学 习 圣 经 。
wǒ yuànyì xuéxí shèngjīng |
| 7. 真 可 惜 !
zhēn kěxī | 16. 圣 经 的 真 理 怎 样 感 动 人 改 变 自 己 的 生 活 ?
shèngjīng de zhēnlǐ zěnyàng gǎndòng rén gǎibiàn zìjǐ de shēnghuó |
| 8. 请 进 !
qǐng jìn | 17. 我 通 常 把 守 望 台 放 在 我 儿 子 的 房 间 里
wǒ tōngcháng bǎ shǒuwàngtái fàng zài wǒ érzi de fángjiān lǐ |
| 9. 我 在 美 国 的 头 十 五 年 住 在 加 州 。
wǒ zài měiguó de tóu shíwǔ nián zhù zài jiāzhōu | 18. 我 打 算 明 年 去 中 国 。
wǒ dǎsuàn míngnián qù zhōngguó |

Hint: See lesson 13 vocabulary list to find out what “tóu” means in sentence #9.

Grammar Charts: Please fill out for homework

Practice using “bǎ” in a sentence

Subject	bǎ	noun	verb	object.
Yēhéhuá	bǎ	shēngmìng	cìgěi	rénlèi.
	bǎ			
	bǎ			
	bǎ			
	bǎ			
	bǎ			
	bǎ			
	bǎ			

Ex: Jehovah gave mankind life. Yēhéhuá bǎ shēngmìng cìgěi rén�èi.

How to make sentences using “only”, “just”, or “merely” : “zhǐ”

Subject	zhǐ	aux. verb	verb	object.
Wǒ zhàngfu	zhǐ	xiǎng	shàng	bān.
	zhǐ			
	zhǐ			
	zhǐ			
	zhǐ			
	zhǐ			
	zhǐ			
	zhǐ			

Ex. My husband just wants to go to work. Wǒ zhàngfu zhǐ xiǎng shàngbān.

Pǔtōnghuà dì 17 kè
Tiānqì * Weather



xià yǔ
下雨 *to rain*
xià xuě
下雪 *to snow*
fēng
风 *wind*
bào fēng
暴风 *storm*
jù fēng
飓风 *hurricane*
tái fēng
台风 *typhoon*
hóng shuǐ
洪水 *flood*
bīng
冰 *ice*
yún
云 *cloud*
wù
雾 *fog*
mēn rè
闷热 *hot & humid*
nuǎn
暖 *warm*
liáng
凉 *cool (temperature)*
wēn dù
温度 *temperature*
shū fu
舒服 *comfortable*



běi fāng
北方 *the north*
nán fāng
南方 *the south*
bān dào
搬到 *to move to*
chéng shì
城市 *city*
yín háng
银行 *bank*
lóu
楼 *story, floor #*
lù
路 *road*
zǒu lù
走路 *to walk*
pǎo bù
跑步 *to run*
rén rén
人人 *everyone*
yì qǐ
一起 *together*
bú gòu
(不) 够 *(not) enough*
chā bu duō
差不多 *almost*
dà bù fēn
大部份 *majority (of a group)*
jiàn kāng
健康 *healthy*



gāng gāng
刚刚 *just*
kuài yào
快要 *will soon*
kuài lái
快来 *come soon*
suī rán
虽然 *although*
jì rán
既然 *since*
qíng kuàng
情况 *condition*
huá
滑 *slippery*
shēn
深 *deep*
shī
湿 *wet*
gān
乾 *dry*
róng huà
溶化 *to melt*
wán quán
完全 *completely*
kě kào
可靠 *reliable*
bào gào
报告 *a report*
jī huì
机会 *opportunity*

dōng tiān
冬天 *winter*

chūn tiān
春天 *spring*

xià tiān
夏天 *summer*

qiū tiān
秋天 *autumn*

An important expression to know in Chinese is "mànzǒu" or "mànmàn zǒu". This is something Chinese people often say as a friend is leaving. It literally means "walk slowly." It is equivalent to the English expressions "Have a nice day!" or "Take care!" (Bǎozhòng)

“Cái” : “then and only then,” (conditional), “before”; “until”
Subject + aux. verb + V-O + cái + aux. verb + VO (noun).

In Mandarin, the word “cái” is used to show that one thing cannot happen unless something else happens FIRST. It shows that something is conditional. In English, we use the words “before”, “only if”, and “only then” to express the idea of “cái”. “Cái” in Chinese means just about the same thing as the word “before” (conditional) in English. Please read the below examples:

1. *I have to put on my clothes before I go to work.*

wǒ yào chuān yī fú cái kě yǐ shàng bān 。
我 要 穿 衣 服 才 可 以 上 班 。

2. *I need to encourage others before I go home.*

wǒ xū yào gǔ lì bié rén cái kě yǐ huí jiā 。
我 需 要 鼓 励 别 人 才 可 以 回 家 。

3. *He didn't get married until he was 40 years old.*

tā sì shí suì cái jié hūn 。
他 四 十 岁 才 结 婚 。



Make your own sentences!

- _____ cái kě yǐ lí kāi 。
_____ 才 可 以 离 开 。
- _____ cái kě yǐ zuò wǒ de péng you 。 *
_____ 才 可 以 做 我 的 朋 友 。
- _____ cái néng chī fàn 。
_____ 才 能 吃 饭 。
- _____ cái kě yǐ kāi shǐ chuán dào 。
_____ 才 可 以 开 始 传 道 。
- zhǎng lǎo xū yào zhǔn bèi hǎo cái kě yǐ _____ 。
长 老 须 要 准 备 好 才 可 以 _____ 。
- _____ 。

*Reminder: Notice that the verb “to be” in the phrase “to be my friend” is “zuò”, not “shì”. “Zuò” is another way to say “is” or “to be”. In this case, saying “shì” (to be) would be incorrect. More examples are: to be a king: zuò wáng, to be a wife: zuò qīzi, to be a teacher: zuò lǎoshī, to be a student: zuò xuéshēng, etc.

More VO Complexes! Some Common Expressions

(Designed to be used with Total Physical Response method)

bānjiā

搬家 *to move (house)*

tíngchē

停车 *to park car*

chǎnxuě

铲雪 *to shovel snow*

gēcǎo

割草 *to mow the lawn*



New adverbs: cōngcōng de
 匆匆地 *hastily*

 zǐxì de
 仔细地 *carefully, with attention to detail*

GRAMMAR CHART: Using “cái”

Subject	aux. verb	VO	cái	aux. verb	VO
Wǒ	yào	chǎnxuě	cái	kěyǐ	chīfàn.

Example: I have to shovel the snow before I can eat. Wǒ yào chǎnxuě cái kěyǐ chīfàn.

More ways to say “and”, “furthermore” 以及 “yǐjǐ”, 而 “ér”, and 并 “bìng”

These words are very common in our Christian publications and in the Bible. It is important to be able to understand how they are used.

“Yǐjǐ” is a commonly used way to connect two phrases or thoughts. It is used in common, everyday Chinese speech. It can also be used to connect a series of nouns. i.e. “wonton soup, eggrolls, yǐjǐ hot tea.”

“Ér” can be a formal sounding word and is not used very much in common speech. It can be very useful for talks and comments at the meetings, though, since often those expressions are more formal than everyday speech. “Ér” also has other usages, but we will only focus on one right now.

“Bìng” is also used more in books than it is in common speech. It is often used to connect thoughts and phrases. See the examples below:

以及 “Yǐjǐ” is used in the quote below to connect two phrases:

zài běnshū dì zhāng wǒmen huì dúdào guānyú shàngdì wángguó de shèngjīng zhēnlǐ yǐjǐ
在 本 书 第 8 章 、 我 们 会 读 到 关 于 上 帝 王 国 的 圣 经 真 理 ， 以 及
zhègè wángguó huì chéngjiù de shì
这 个 王 国 会 成 就 的 事 。

In chapter 8, we will learn more about God’s Kingdom and what it will accomplish.

而 “Ér”: “and” in the sense of connecting two verbs:

yēsū yuànyì wèile zhěngjiù rénlèi ér sǐwáng
耶 稣 愿 意 为 了 拯 救 人 类 而 死 亡 。

yēsū wèile fú cóng shàngdì bèi dài bǔ ér shòu kǔ
耶 稣 为 了 服 从 上 帝 被 逮 捕 而 受 苦 。

而 “Ér”: can also show contrast between two phrases:

wǒmen bīxū jiēshòu shàngdì de tǒngzhì fú cóng shàngdì ér búshì fú cóng rén
我 们 必 须 接 受 上 帝 的 统 治 ， 服 从 上 帝 而 不 是 服 从 人 。 Acts 5:29

wǒ lái búshì yào shòu rén fúshì érshì yào fúshì rén búshì érshì
“我 来 、 不 是 要 受 人 服 事 ， 而 是 要 服 事 人 。” (note the pattern: 不是.....而是....)
“I came, not to be ministered to, but to minister.” Mt. 20:28

并 “Bìng” is used in the quote below to connect two phrases:

wǒmen bīxū zhǐ xiàng yēhéhuá dǎogào bìng tōngguò tā érzi yēsū dǎogào
我 们 必 须 只 向 耶 和 华 祷 告 ， 并 通 过 他 儿 子 耶 稣 祷 告 。

We must pray only to Jehovah through his Son.



How to say “There is”, “There are”, or “Is there” ... yǒu 有

When translating expressions from English into Chinese, we often find that we must translate *the idea or the thought* rather than the exact words. You have probably noticed this while preparing for the meetings in Chinese. Often, the same thought in the Watchtower is translated from English into Chinese using different expressions. The expression “there is” is one example of this.

Important Note: In Chinese “there is” is not said “那里是”, rather it is translated “有”, to have. Notice some examples of this in the sentences below.

1. “Where there is intellect, there is a mind. Where there is a mind, there is a person.” g98 6/22 p. 32

yǒu zhìhuì jiù bìxū yǒu tóunǎo yǒu tóunǎo jiù bìxū yǒu yī wèi gètǐ
“有 智慧 就必须 有 头脑。 有 头脑 就必须 有 一位 个体。” *

2. Is there a Creator who cares about people? Yes, there is.

yǒu yī wèi guānxīn rén de zàowùzhǔ ma yǒu
有 一位 关心 人的 造物主 吗? 有。 **

3. There is a Creator who cares about people.

yǒu yī wèi guānxīn rén de zàowùzhǔ
有 一位 关心 人的 造物主。

4. There are many Jehovah’s Witnesses learning Mandarin.

yǒu hěn duō xué pǔtōnghuà de yēhéhuá jiànzhèngrén
有 很 多 学 普通 话 的 耶和 华 见 证 人。

5. “There is actually to us one God, the Father... and there is one Lord, Jesus Christ.” 1 Cor. 8:5, 6

wǒmen què zhǐ yǒu yī wèi zhēnshén jiùshì tiānfù lìngwài zhǐ yǒu yī wèi zhǔ jiùshì yēsū jīdū
“我们 却 只 有 一位 真神、就是 天父。 另外 只 有 一位 主、就是 耶稣 基督。”

6. There are many Jehovah’s Witnesses learning foreign languages. _____

7. There are many Chinese people who can speak English. _____

As part of your homework for this week, please read & listen to Ecclesiastes 3:1-9 once a day, every day this week. Note that a literal English translation of those verses in Chinese would read something like: “There is a time for birth and there is a time to die, ...” etc.

*Notice that in Chinese, we don’t refer to spirit creatures as 人 (people), but as 个体 (entities) or 灵体.

**For a review on how a phrase becomes an adjective when put before a noun, please see page 120. Here are two English examples using Chinese grammar: #3. “There is a cares about people de Creator.” #4. “There are many learning Mandarin de Jehovah’s Witnesses.” Use these same patterns for translating questions #5 – #7.

Important Verbs

Tip: As a memory aid, try saying the verb out loud as you act it out.

liú 留 to stay, remain	zǒu 走 to leave/to walk	kāi 开 to open/turn on
tūi 推 to push	zhuàn 赚 to make (money)	guān 关 to close/turn off
lā 拉 to pull	yáo 摇 to shake	mǎi 买 to buy
ná 拿 to take (an object)	fān 翻 to turn, flip	mài 卖 to sell
bào 抱 to pick up (a child)	cā 擦 to rub, wipe	quàn 劝 to counsel
wò 握 to hold (hand)	wā 挖 to dig (a hole)	děng 等 to wait
mō 摸 touch	jiǎn 剪 to cut (with scissors)	shēng 升 to ascend
dòng 动 to move	zhāi 摘 to pick (fruit)	diào 掉 to drop/fall
tiào 跳 jump	jiǎn 拣 to pick up (off floor)	rēng 扔 to throw, toss
dǎ 打 to hit; to spank	kǎn 砍 to chop (wood)	shuāi 摔 to throw (down)
wánr 玩儿 to play; have fun	xǐ 洗 to wash	guà 挂 to hang

Homework: Translate the following sentences into English.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>tāde nǚ'ér zhèngzài tíngchē
1. 他的女儿正在停车。</p> <p>zhǎnglǎo yě juéde lù hěn huá
2. 长老也觉得路很滑。</p> <p>rénrén dōu xǐhuan xiàtiān
3. 人人都喜欢夏天。</p> <p>qǐng ná yīběn zázhì lái gěi wǒ
4. 请拿一本杂志来给我。</p> <p>dàbùfēnde rén dōu xǐhuan chūntiān
5. 大部份的人都喜欢春天。</p> <p>wǒ érzi bú yuànyì gēcǎo
6. 我儿子不愿意割草。</p> <p>suǒyǒurén dōu xūyào zǐxì xuéxí shèngjīng
7. 所有人都需要仔细学习圣经。</p> | <p>sān dàn bèi shuāi dào dìshàng lái
8. 撒旦被摔到地上来。</p> <p>zuótiān bǐ jīntiān liáng
9. 昨天比今天凉。</p> <p>kuàiyào xiàxuě
10. 快要下雪。</p> <p>xiàwá zhāi le guǒzi
11. 夏娃摘了果子。</p> <p>wǒ dìdì gānggang bānjiāle
12. 我弟弟刚刚搬家了。</p> <p>wǒ zhùzài sān lóu
13. 我住在三楼。</p> <p>nǐ shūfu ma
14. 你舒服吗？</p> |
|--|---|

Pǔtōnghuà dì 18 kè: Theocratic Vocabulary

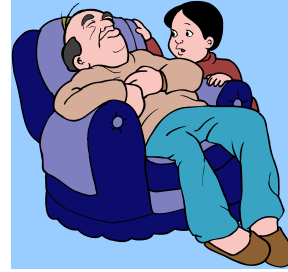
The words in blue and green are used together as phrases; "to perform a miracle": shīxíng qíjì

shīxíng 施行 to perform	shànyòng 善用 to use (a thing) well	zhǐchū 指出 to point out
qíjì 奇迹 a miracle	qǔyuè 取悦 to please	biǎoxiàn 表现 to show
zhíxíng 执行 to carry out	méng yuè nà 蒙悦纳 to gain approval	wěirèn 委任 to appoint
pànjué 判决 judgment	zhǔnshí 准时 on time	zhème duōme 这么/多么 so much*
fúwù 服务 service/to serve	xíguàn 习惯 to be used to	yǒuxiàode 有效的 effective
tèquán 特权 a privilege	zhíde 值得 to deserve	xīwàng 希望 to hope
shūróng 殊荣 a rare honor	chēngzàn 称赞 to praise	hòuguǒ 后果 a consequence
jiāotuō 交托 to entrust with	mào fàn 冒犯 to offend (someone)	zāoyù 遭遇 a bad experience
rèn wu 任务 assignment	miànduì 面对 to face (something)	yìwài 意外 an accident
zérèn 责任 responsibility	cháo xiào 嘲笑 to ridicule	shízài 实在 truly
fúhé 符合 to conform to	dìng 定 to order, to determine	zhēnde 真的 really
biāozhǔn 标准 standards	jìn lì 尽力 to do one's best	jǐnshǒu 谨守 keep (a law)
zīgé 资格 qualifications	fù yú 富於 to be full of	àn zhào (按) 照 according to
tiáo jiàn 条件 conditions	yí qiè 一切 everything	lǜ fǎ 律法 law
shòu dào 受到 to get	jiē shòu 接受 to accept/receive	fàng qì 放弃 to give up
pī zhǔn 批准 approved	guǎn lǐ 管理 to oversee	chéng yuán 成员 a member
fā biǎo 发表 to give (a talk)	gōng zhòng yǎn jiǎng 公众 演讲 a Public Talk	jiān dū 监督 overseer
lì hài 厉害 tremendous	qí miào 奇妙 amazing	liáng hǎo 良好 good, fine
tè bié dà huì rì 特别大会日 SAD	fēn qū dà huì 分区 大会 circuit assembly	qū yù dà huì 区域大会 district convention

Relative pronouns: “Who”, “Which”, and “That”

That/this + VO + de + noun + description.

Subject + suǒ + verb + de + noun + description.



Most of us have heard the sentence: “This is the house *that* Jack built.” One could also say: “This is the house *which* Jack built.” The Chinese equivalent for the English relative pronouns “who”, “which”, or “that” is **suǒ**. In Chinese one could say: “This is Jack suǒ built de house...” (Zhè shì Jack suǒ jiànzhù de fángzi.) One could also say: Zhè shì Jack jiànzhù de fángzi. So, the **suǒ** can be dropped without changing the meaning of the sentence. English has some similar expressions. For example: “We ate a home-cooked meal”. One could express this thought another way: “We ate a meal *which* was cooked at home.” The two expressions mean the same thing, but the second one is more formal.

The relative pronoun *which* marks the relative clause and refers (within the relative clause) to the meal being referred to in the main clause. It provides a link between the two sentences “We ate a meal” and “The meal was cooked at home,” where the meal referred to in each case is the same. “We ate a meal *which* was cooked at home.”

In this sentence, the clause “*which was cooked at home*” modifies (or describes) the noun “meal”. In Chinese, the modifying phrase should come *before* the noun it modifies: for example, “the home cooked meal”. Also, between the modifying clause and the noun there is always a “de”: “Home cooked *de* meal.” The word “de” connects the clause with the noun it modifies.

If the subject of the sentence is “VO de noun” then “suǒ” does not need to be used (see examples 1-3). But, if the subject of the sentence is a noun or pronoun, then “suǒ” can be inserted before the verb (see examples 4-6). This is a more formal grammar pattern. It is used often in the Bible and in our literature. It can be used to express passive sentences. (#6)

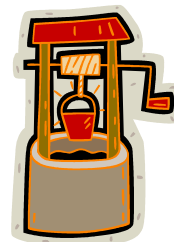
1. nà shuōhuà de háizi hěn kě'ài
那 说话 的 孩子 很 可爱。 That *child who* is talking is really cute.
2. nà gēcǎo de rén fēicháng lèi
那 割草 的 人 非常 累。 That *person who* is mowing the lawn is extremely tired.
3. nà xiězì de rén hěn piàoliang
那 写字 的 人 很 漂亮。 That *person who* is writing is very pretty.
4. yēhéhuá suǒ chuàngzào de yíqiè dōu qímiào
耶和華 所 创造 的 一切 都 奇妙。 Everything *that* Jehovah created is amazing.
5. wǒmen kěyǐ zài nǎ lǐ dúdào yēsū suǒ shuō de huà
我们 可以 在 哪里 读到 耶稣 所 说 的 话？ Where can we read things *that* Jesus said?
6. nǐ shì shàngdì suǒ rènshi de rén ma
你 是 上帝 所 认识 的 人 吗？ Are you a person *whom* God knows?

(passive voice translation): Are you known by God? (w11 9/15)

Chéngyǔ 成语 Chinese Idioms

An idiom is a saying that tells a story or carries a specific meaning, such as “wild goose chase” or “it’s a dog eat dog world”. The Chinese language has MANY more commonly used idioms than the English language does. Chinese idioms are called “chéngyǔ”. If we master the commonly used idioms in Chinese, then we will be able to quickly convey deep ideas to Chinese people.

Chéngyǔ are often made up of four characters. They are listed in most dictionaries under the first character of the chéngyǔ. Watchtower publications use chéngyǔ often. Chéngyǔ can be a very effective tool in teaching. They carry deep meaning and, used correctly, can really touch a person’s heart. The Lasting Peace and Happiness brochure includes some chéngyǔ on page 17. Here are some examples of chéngyǔ:



yǐnshuǐ sī yuán

饮水思源 : When you drink water, think of the source

gūjūnzhuòzhàn

孤军作战 : A lone soldier fighting a battle

jìnzhūzhěchì jìn mòzhěhēi

近朱者赤、近墨者黑 : Similar to “bad associations spoil useful habits”

yījiāngōngchéng wàn gǔ kū

一将功成万骨枯 : One general’s reputation is built on 10,000 bones

jīdūtú búshì gūjūnzhuòzhàn de yēhéhuá bāngzhù wǒmen
Example: 基督徒不是孤军作战的。耶和华帮助我们。
Christians are not alone in fighting our battle. Jehovah helps us.

Useful VO complexes

gànhuó

干活 to do manual labor; also includes doing chores at home or at the Kingdom Hall.

móushēng

谋生 to make a living

kāi wánxiào

开玩笑 to crack a joke

wǒ shì gēn nǐ kāi wánxiào de

1. 我是跟你开玩笑的。 *I was only joking with you.*

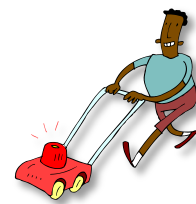
wǒmen jīntiān dǎsuàn gànhuó

2. 我们今天打算干活。 *We plan to do chores today.*

fūfù liǎ dōu bìxū chūwài móushēng ma

3. “夫妇俩都必须出外谋生吗？” (quote from 2003 KM p.8 par. 6)

“Is it really necessary for both husband & wife to be secularly employed?”



How to say “Other than...”, “No one but..” or “Besides...”

Chú le... (zhīwài or yǐwài),...

Formula: Chúle + subject + zhiwài, (many grammar patterns can follow).

Read and think about the sentences below. Remembering that “wài” means “outside”, makes this grammar pattern make more sense. Note that sentences # 2 - 4 are quotes from our Christian publications:

- chúle diànnǎo tā duì shénme dōu bù gǎn xìngqù
1. 除了电脑、他对什么都不感兴趣。

He isn't interested in anything but computers.

- chúle zhè yíqiè zhīwài hái yào chuānshàng ài
2. “除了这一切之外、还要穿上爱...”

“Besides all these things, clothe yourselves with love...” Colossians 3:12-14

- chúle zhúhù chuándào zhīwài wǒmen hái yǒu nǎ xiē chuándào jīhuì
3. “除了逐户传道之外、我们还有哪些传道机会？”

What opportunities of service might we enjoy in addition to our house-to-house territory?

- chúle yēhéhuá zhīwài méiyǒu rén nénggòu bāngzhù yǐnuò
4. “除了耶和华之外、没有人能够帮助以诺。”

No one could help Enoch but Jehovah.

Grammar Chart: Practice with using “besides” in sentences

chúle	Subject	zhīwài,	méiyǒu	noun	verb + guò	object.
chúle	Yēsū	zhīwài,	méiyǒu	rén	jiànguò	Shàngdì.
chúle		zhīwài,				
chúle		zhīwài				
chúle		zhīwài				

Ex. Besides Jesus, no man has seen God. Chúle Yēsū zhīwài, méiyǒu rén jiànguò Shàngdì.

Examples of how to use some of this week's vocabulary...

tā pǎo de duōme kuài a

* 他跑得多么快啊！ How fast he runs! or He runs so fast!

zhème duō rén yǒu dìfang ma

* 这么多人、有地方吗？ Is there enough room for so many people?

tā shòudào pīzhǔn le

他受到批准了。 He got approved.

yēhéhuá kuàiyào zhíxíng pànjué

耶和华快要执行判决。 Jehovah will soon carry out judgment.

nǐ zhēnde zhíde chēngzàn

你真的值得称赞！ You really deserve commendation!

Homework Sentences

1. jùhuì bèi qǔxiāo le yīnwéi lù hěn huá wǒ qīdài lèyuánde yīngxǔ shíxiàn
聚会被取消了因为路很滑。 9. 我期待乐园的应许实现。
2. wǒ gānggang fāxiàn le wàimian fēicháng lěng nǐ huì dāi duōjiǔ ne
我刚刚发现了外面非常冷！ 10. 你会待多久呢？
3. wǒ xiānsheng zuótiān pèngdào le yīgè chóngbài zǔxiān de rén
我先生昨天碰到了一个崇拜祖先的人。
4. wǒ xīwàng nǐ kuài huīfù jiànkāng nǐ jiào shénme míngzi
我希望你快恢复健康。 11. 你叫什么名字？
5. wǒmen míngtiān xiàwǔ huì dǎsǎo wángguójùhuìsuǒ nǐ chūlai ba
我们明天下午会打扫王国聚会所。 12. 你出来吧！
6. yǐsèlièrén bèi lǔ dào bābǐlún qù yēsū shíxíngle hěnduō qíjì
以色列人被虏到巴比伦去。 13. 耶稣实行了很多奇迹。
7. shàngdì huì jiějué rénlèi suǒ miànduì de nántí wǒmen shǔyú yēhéhuá
上帝会解决人类所面对的难题。 14. 我们属于耶和华。
8. wǒmen dōu yào tiāntiān chōuchū shíjiān xuéxí shèngjīng nǐ qù ma
我们都天天抽出时间学习圣经。 15. 你去吗？

(Since this is the last class, you may need to use email to turn your homework in.)

GRAMMAR CHARTS: Please fill in each part of speech as part of your homework

Practice with “that, which, or what” sentences

Subject	suǒ	verb	de	noun	modifier	adjective.
Yēsū	suǒ	shuō	de	huà	fēicháng	yǒu yìsī.
	suǒ		de			
	suǒ		de			
	suǒ		de			
	suǒ		de			
	suǒ		de			

Ex: What Jesus said was extremely interesting. Yēsū suǒ shuō de huà fēicháng yǒu yìsī.

Practice with “búshì... érshì...” sentences

Subject	verb,	búshì	aux. verb	verb	object,	érshì	aux. verb	verb	object.
Tāmen	lái,	búshì	yào	chī	fàn,	érshì	yào	chuán	dào.
		búshì				érshì			
		búshì				érshì			
		búshì				érshì			
		búshì				érshì			
		búshì				érshì			
		búshì				érshì			

Ex. They came, not to eat, but to preach. Tāmen lái, búshì yào chīfàn, érshì yào chuándào.

Some More Important Verbs*: For Reference

chūxí 出席 to attend	róngxǔ 容许 to permit	bǎochí 保持 to maintain
cānjiā 参加 to participate	tuīlǐ 推理 to reason on	qǔxiāo 取消 to cancel
fā 发 to send out, deliver	xìnlài 信赖 to trust	quèdìng 确定 to confirm
fāchū 发出 to send out	pànwàng 盼望 to hope for	huànbìng 患病 to get sick (VO)
fājué 发觉 to realize	kěwàng 渴望 to wish for	jiěshì 解释 to explain
fānù 发怒 to get angry	qīdài 期待 to expect	zhěngjiù 拯救 to rescue
fāhuī 发挥 to exert	jiànlì shèlì 建立/设立 to establish	lì xià 立下 to set
fāxiàn 发现 to discover	yōnghù 拥护 to uphold	yìnshuā 印刷 to print
fābiǎo 发表 to give (a talk)	jiànào 建造 to build	fānyì 翻译 to translate
fā zì 发自 from (the heart)	huǐmiè 毁灭 to destroy	chūbǎn 出版 to publish
láizì 来自 to come from (a place)	zhīchí 支持 to support	fúchí 扶持 to assist/help
shúxī 熟悉 to be familiar with	shìfàng 释放 to release	yǐnyòu 引诱 to tempt
jǔxíng 举行 to hold (a meeting)	xiǎngshòu 享受 to enjoy	xīyǐn 吸引 to attract
tuōlí 脱离 to break free from	gōngjī 攻击 to attack	xúnqiú zhuīqiú 寻求 / 追求 to seek
huòdé 获得 to receive/to get	zhēngfú 征服 to conquer	zēngjiā 增加 to increase

*These verbs are in no particular order.

dédào 得到 to obtain/to get	tǒngzhì 统治 to rule	shěnpàn 审判 to judge
chōngmǎn 充满 to be filled with	yíngdé 赢得 to gain	jīnglì 经历 to undergo
jiēchù 接触 to come in contact with	zébei 责备 to reprove	jīngguò 经过 to pass through
chéngjiù 成就 to accomplish	yùnyòng 运用 to put to use	tōngguò 通过 by means of
jiǎngshǎng 奖赏 to reward	yǐnmán 隐瞒 to conceal/hide	yǐncáng 隐藏 to hide
láolù 劳碌 to toil	chāipài 差派 to send out	shōugē 收割 to reap, harvest
jiějué 解决 to solve	jiāqiáng 加强 to strengthen	pèngdào 碰到 to meet
sīkǎo chénsī 思考/ 沉思 to meditate	chéngshòu 承受 to inherit	shìfèng 事奉 to worship/serve
xǐngchá 省察 to examine oneself	cháyàn 查验 to examine	shǔyú 属于 to belong to
xiàqu 下去 to go down	chōuchū 抽出 to take (time)	dǎsǎo 打扫 to clean/sweep
chūlai 出来 to come out	xīnshǎng 欣赏 to appreciate	chúqù 除去 to remove
chūqù 出去 to go out	fèndòu 奋斗 to struggle	chǎnchú 铲除 to eradicate
fēixiáng 飞翔 to fly	zhòng 种 to grow, to plant	chuī 吹 to blow (a horn)
jiāo 教 to teach	shāsǐ 杀死 to kill	guā 刮 to blow (wind)
fēnfù 吩咐 to instruct	fúshì 服事 to serve/minister	jùjué 拒绝 to reject

jùjí
聚集 to gather together

zhàojí
召集 to gather

jíhé
集合 to gather

huílái
回来 to come back

huíqù
回去 to go back

zhuǎn
转 to turn, change

fénshāo
焚烧 to burn (with fire)

kǎo
烤 to bake

chǎo
炒 to fry (food)

chéng
乘 to ride (a plane, train)

qí
骑 to ride (animal or bike)

fēnsàn
分散 to scatter

dāi
待 to stay

huīfù
恢复 to regain

zhìhǎo
治好 to cure (illness)

duìdài
对待 to treat

tíxǐng
提醒 to remind

jǐnggào
警告 to warn

nüèdài
虐待 to mistreat

shàndài
善待 to treat well

kànchū
看出 to realize

jiǎn
减 to subtract

jiā
加 to add

mùdǔ
目睹 to eyewitness

liáotiān
聊天 to chat

yōngbào
拥抱 to hug

jiào
叫 to be called

yóuyǒng
游泳 to swim

dēng
登 to climb, ascend

xiūxi
休息 to rest

shuìwǔjiào
睡午觉 to take a nap

cì
刺 to pierce, poke

bàozhà
爆炸 to explode

jiáo
嚼 to chew

yǎo
咬 to bite

tù
吐 to vomit; spit

xùnliàn
训练 to train (someone)

xiàn
献 to sacrifice

huíxiǎng
回想 to recall

chéngfá
惩罚 to punish

máizàng
埋葬 to bury

dǎjià
打架 to have a fist fight

yíchuán 遗传 to transmit (sin, or illness)	xiàbài 下拜 to do obeisance	chǎojià 吵架 to quarrel
wùhuì 误会 to misunderstand	wēihè kǒnghè 威吓 / 恐吓 to threaten	piàn 骗 to trick
làngfèi 浪费 to waste	píng 凭 to be based upon	qiángdiào 强调 to emphasize
hǎnjiào 喊叫 to yell	cāi 猜 to guess	kǎolǜ 考虑 to consider
xiāoshī 消失 to fade away	huídá 回答 to answer	fǎngwèn 访问 to interview
xuǎnzé 选择 to choose	tóupiào 投票 to vote	xuǎnjǔ 选举 to elect
yuánliàng 原谅 to forgive	bāoróng 包容 to forgive	ráoshù 饶恕 to forgive
wánchéng 完成 to accomplish	dūdǎo 督导 to oversee	chúdiào 除掉 to eliminate
huàn 换 to change/exchange	fángài 妨碍 to hinder	zǔ'ài 阻碍 to block, hinder
cóngshì 从事 to engage in (work)	tídào 提到 to mention	chóngfù 重复 to repeat
tūnshì 吞噬 to devour	tūnxià 吞下 to swallow	xiāohuà 消化 to digest
xiǎnxiàn 显现 to appear	huà 化 to change into	áoliàn 熬炼 to refine
jiàoyù 教育 to educate	péiyù 培育 to train	dǎozhì 导至 to lead to (a result)
yǎng 养 to raise (kids or pets)	pāi 拍 to clap, slap, tap	pāishǒu 拍手 to clap (hands)

fányǎn 繁衍 to multiply, reproduce	chūxiàn 出现 to appear	dǎzhàng 打仗 to fight a battle
fādǒu 发抖 to shiver/shudder	zhàn 站 to stand	zhèndòng 震动 to shake/rock
huáiyí 怀疑 to doubt	yǐnqǐ 引起 to cause	hūxī 呼吸 to breathe
cì 赐 to give, grant	yǐndǎo 引导 to guide	kào 靠 to depend upon
míhuo 迷惑 to mislead	mílù 迷路 to be lost	shīqù 失去 to lose
zhéduàn 折断 to break	sǔnhài 损害 to harm, injure	sǔnshī 损失 to suffer loss
làndiào 烂掉 to rot away	guǒ 裹 to wrap, bind	bāowéi 包围 to surround
huáiniàn 怀念 to cherish a memory of	zhēnshì 珍视 to value	zhēnxī 珍惜 to cherish
chénggōng 成功 to succeed	shǐyòng 使用 to use	cuòguò 错过 to miss
láiwǎng 来往 to associate with	jiěkāi 解开 to undo	gǎn 敢 to dare
jiāowǎng 交往 to associate with	xiǎode 晓得 to know	kè 刻 to engrave
jièyì 介意 to mind	jiè 借 to lend (\$)	jièyòng 借用 to borrow
dāying 答应 to accept/agree	chéngnuò 承诺 to promise	biǎodá 表达 to express (self)
sòng 送 to see off	zhànshèng 战胜 to conquer	jìnzhǐ 禁止 to prohibit

sònggěi
送给 to give as a present

yùdào
遇到 to run into/meet

yuē
约 to make an app't

jiǎzhuāng
假装 to pretend

jièkǒu
借口 to use an excuse

biànchéng
变成 to become

tuōyán
拖延 to procrastinate

dádào
达到 to achieve, to reach

qiǎngpò
强迫 to coerce, force

shāngyì
商议 to consult

tíchū
提出 to raise (question)

guòqu
过去 to go over

kèfú
克服 to endure/overcome

shìfèng
事奉 to worship

wàngduàn
妄断 to jump to unfounded conclusions (about someone); to be judgmental

jì
寄 to mail (a letter)

qǐng
请 to treat (to a meal)

yuēhuì
约会 to date

zhìzào
制造 to manufacture

shēngchēng
声称 to claim

gǎibiàn
改变 to change

cháng
尝 to taste

tígōng
提供 to provide

zhēgài
遮盖 to cover

tiáozhěng
调整 to adjust

fùchū
付出 to expend (effort)

guòlái
过来 to come over

tuǒxié
妥协 to compromise

yánjiū
研究 to study

jìsuàn
计算 to calculate

tán
谈 to talk/chat

tánliàn'ài
谈恋爱 to date

tiáoqíng
调情 to flirt

lǔ
掳 to take captive

zhǔchí
主持 to conduct

péi
陪 to accompany

ànshì
暗示 to imply

yìwèizhe
意味著 to mean

jiūzhèng
纠正 to correct

shìyìng
适应 to adapt

sōují
搜集 to collect (info)

chǔjué
处决 to execute

shèngxià
剩下 to remain

THINGS YOU MAY HEAR IN THE MINISTRY

有什么事?	yǒu shénme shì?	What do you want
我很忙。	wǒ hěn máng。	I am busy.
我没空。	wǒ méi kòng.	I have no time
我没兴趣	wǒ méi xìngqù.	I am not interested
我不需要了	wǒ bù xūyào le.	I don't need it. (another way of saying 'I'm not interested')
你信教吗?	nǐ xìn jiào ma?	Do you have a religion?
你信甚麽教?	nǐ xìn shénme jiào?	What religion are you.
我信	wǒ xìn	I believe
我不信教	wǒ bú xìn jiào.	I have no religion. (I don't believe in any religion)
我信自己	wǒ xìn zìjǐ.	I believe in myself
我信科学	wǒ xìn kēxué.	I believe in science. (or I put my trust in science. Usually means they are athiests.)
我是无神论者	wǒ shì wúshénlùnzhě.	I am atheist. (literally I am no god theory person.)
我信迷信	wǒ xìn míxìn.	I believe in superstition. (sometimes Buddhists say this)
我拜神	wǒ bài shén.	I worship the gods (Buddists use this phrase)
我信佛	wǒ xìn fō	I believe in Buddha
我信佛教	wǒ xìn fōjiào	I am Buddhist (Literally I believe in the Buddhist religion)
我已经信了教	Wǒ yǐjīng xìn jiào le.	I already have a religion. (They usually mean they are Christian)

If they say “Wǒ yǐjīng xìn jiào le” you can ask them

你信什么教?	"nǐ xìn shénme jiào"	What religion do you believe in?
我信天主教	wǒ xìn tiānzhǔjiào	I am Catholic (I believe in Catholicism)
我信基督教	wǒ xìn jīdūjiào	I am Christian (I believe in the Christian faith)
我已经是基督徒	Wo yǐjīng shì jīdūtú.	I am already a Christian

我信耶稣	wǒ xìn yēsū	I believe in Jesus
我不感兴趣	wǒ bù gǎn xìngqù	I am not interested
没有兴趣	méiyǒu xìngqù	not interested
没兴趣	méi xìngqù	not interested (same as above.)
我对宗教没有兴趣	wǒ duì zōngjiào méiyǒu xìngqù	I have no interest in religion.
我不要	wǒ bú yào	I don't want (it)
不要了	bú yào le	don't want (the same as above)
不需要了	bú xūyào le	It's not necessary (or don't bother. This may be said if you offer to make a return visit.)
太忙	tài máng	too busy
我相信所有宗教都好	wǒ xiāngxìn suǒyǒu zōngjiào dōu hǎo.	I believe all religion is good.
所有宗教都一样	suǒyǒu zōngjiào dōu yíyàng.	All religions are the same.
你是基督教, 还是天主教?	nǐ shì jīdūjiào, hái shì tiānzhǔjiào?	Are you Christian or Catholic.

Chinese people generally do not say they are Protestant. They say they are Christian. So they may ask you if you are Catholic or Christian.

You may rarely hear the following:

我信伊斯兰教	wǒ xìn yīslánjiào	I am Islamic (I believe in Islam "Muslim". Northwest China has many Muslims.)
我信回教	wǒ xìn huíjiào.	I am Muslim (Islamic)
我是一个穆斯林	wǒ shì yíge Mùsīlín.	I am Muslim (Mùsīlín is an imitation of the English word Muslim)

Some Chinese people believe that the original language of the Bible is English and that the Bible was written in the West. So, they therefore feel that the Bible isn't suitable for people from the East.

Since most Chinese people are totally unfamiliar with the Bible, there are many Biblical terms they do not understand, including:

shǔlíng zhèngyì zuì zuìrén fùhuó mísaìyà jīdū shènglíng jìngqián
 属灵、正义、罪、罪人、复活、弥赛亚、基督、圣灵、敬虔

Even if a publisher says those words in perfect Chinese with a perfect accent, most Chinese people will still not understand what they mean. **For example, in China "zuìrén" means "criminal".** So, it is very important to explain what those words mean to the householder when you encounter them in the Bible or publications.

Càidān Sample Menu

nǐ yào hē shénme dōngxi
 “你要喝什么东西？” - “What would you like to drink?”

yǐnliào 饮料	DRINKS		
qìshuǐ 汽水 (SODA) -	kě lè 可乐 (Coke)	xuěbì 雪碧 (Sprite)	bīngchá 冰茶 (Iced tea)
OTHER DRINKS -	rèchá 热茶 (hot tea)	kāfēi 咖啡 (Coffee)	bīngshuǐ 冰水 (Iced water)

wǒ yào
 “我要...” - “I would like...”

càiyáo 菜肴	DISHES		
chāshāochǎomiàn 叉烧炒面	PORK CHOW MEIN	jī lāomiàn 鸡捞面	CHICKEN LO MEIN
jièlán jī 芥兰鸡	CHICKEN W/ BROCCOLI	tiánsuān jī 甜酸鸡	SWEET & SOUR CHICKEN
zuǒzōng jī 左宗鸡	GENERAL TSO'S CHICKEN	qīngjiāoniú 清椒牛	PEPPER STEAK W/ ONIONS
húnánniú 湖南牛	HUNAN BEEF	jièlánxiā 芥兰虾	SHRIMP W/ BROCCOLI
shícàixiā 什菜虾	SHRIMP W/ CHINESE VEGETABLES	shícàichāshāo 什菜叉烧	ROAST PORK W/ MIXED VEGETABLES
xiālóng hú 虾龙糊	SHRIMP W/ LOBSTER SAUCE	yāoguǒ jī 腰果鸡	CASHEW CHICKEN
yúxiāng ròu sī 鱼香肉丝	SHREDDED PORK W/ GARLIC SAUCE	sìchuānniú 四川牛	SZECHUAN BEEF
wúgǔpái 无骨排	BONELESS SPARE RIBS	mógū jī piàn 蘑菇鸡片	MOO GOO GAI PAN
zhīma jī 芝麻鸡	SESAME CHICKEN	shāopáigǔ 烧排骨	B.B.Q. SPARE RIBS
gōngbǎo jī 宫保鸡	KUNG PAO CHICKEN	zhǔsùshíjīn 煮素什锦	STEAMED MIXED VEGETABLES
yúxiāng jī 鱼香绩	CHICKEN W/ GARLIC SAUCE	jièlánniú 芥兰牛	BEEF W/ BROCCOLI

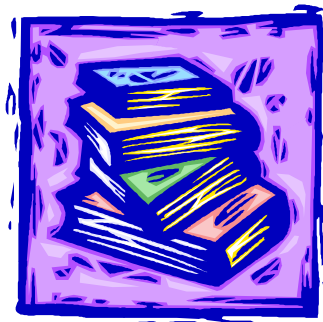
hǎochī
 好吃!!! - **DELICIOUS!!!**

mǎidān
 买单 - **CHECK, PLEASE.**

	xiǎochī 小吃 -	SNACKS	
chūnjuǎn 春卷	EGG ROLL	chāshāo chǎofàn (叉烧) 炒饭	(PORK) FRIED RICE
húntúntāng 馄饨汤	WONTON SOUP	suān là tāng 酸辣汤	HOT & SOUR SOUP

How to Say “of”

“zhī” 之 and “de” 的



“The Kingdom of God”, “The Word of God”. How would we say things like this in Mandarin? In Chinese these phrases are usually translated as possessive: God’s Word or God’s Kingdom (using “de” to make the phrase possessive). A more literary way to do it, though, is by using the word “zhī”. The word “zhī” has the same grammar pattern as possessive “de”. For example, “Shàngdì de dào” can also be translated “Shàngdì zhī dào” in Chinese. Both of these expressions mean “The Word of God”. In a more technical sense, we could say that “de” and “zhī” are both used to connect the modifier and the word modified.

The most common way to say “of” is to use “de” and make the expression possessive. “Zhī” in the sense spoken of here, is not a common spoken word. It is used poetically and is used frequently in the Bible.

yīngxǔ zhī dì

* 应许之地 “*the Promised Land*”

wángguó zhī zǐ

* 王国之子 “*the sons of the Kingdom*”

wànshì zhī yuē

* 万世之约 “*the indefinitely lasting covenant*”

xuèròu zhī qū

* 血肉之躯 (*bodies of*) “*flesh*” (see 1 Cor. 10:3)

kǎisǎ zhī wù

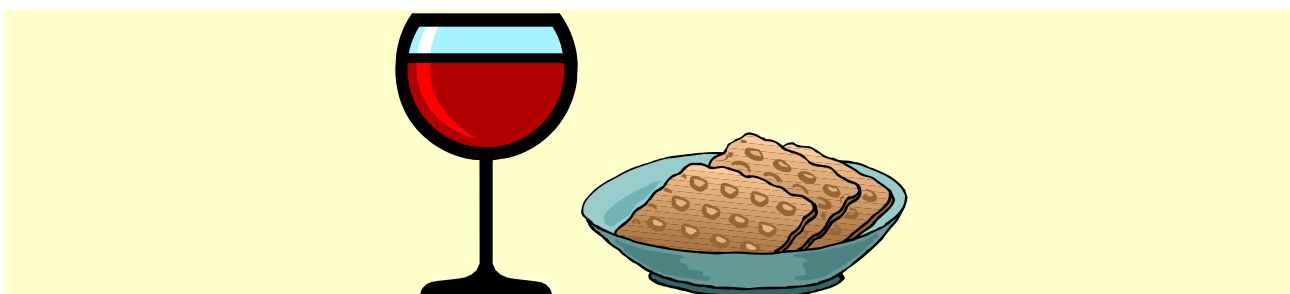
* 凯撒之物 “*Caesar’s things*” (literally “*things of Caesar*”)

mièwáng zhī zǐ

* 灭亡之子 *the son of destruction* (see 2 Thess. 2:3)

*These examples are phrases, not whole sentences.

The Memorial of Christ's Death Vocabulary



shòunànjìniàn

受难纪念 : **Memorial**

wújiàobǐng

无酵饼 : **unleavened bread**

shēntǐ

身体 : **body**

pútáojiǔ

葡萄酒 : **wine**

xuè

血 : **blood**

xiàngzhēngwù

象征物 : **emblems**

rìluò

日落 : **sundown**

yāoqǐng

邀请 : **invitation**

lìngwài de miányáng

另外的 绵羊 : **the other sheep**

shòugāo jīdūtú

受膏基督徒 : **anointed Christians**

yúyuèjié

逾越节 : **Passover**

nísànyuè

尼散月 : **Nisan**

yīn lì

阴历 : **lunar calendar**

jìniàn

纪念 : **commemorate**

dàibiǎo

代表 : **to represent**

zhǐ

指 : **to indicate**

wǎncān

晚餐 : **evening meal**

xīnyuē

新约 : **the new covenant**

jūnwáng

君王 : **king**

jìsī

祭司 : **priest**

méntú

门徒 : **disciples**

shǐtú

使徒 : **apostle**

zhǔ

主 : **Lord**

shújià

赎价 : **ransom**

xīshēng

牺牲 : **to sacrifice**

chūxí

出席 : **to attend**

guà zài zhùshàng

挂在柱上 : **to hang on a stake**

mísàiyà

弥赛亚 : **Messiah**

Jesus' Twelve Disciples

Yēsū de shí'èr ge méntú

xīmén bǐdé

西门 彼得

Simon Peter

yǎgè

雅各

James

āndéliè

安得烈

Andrew

xīmén

西门

Simon

yuēhàn

约翰

John

yǎgè

雅各

James

jiālùdeyóudà

加略的犹大

Judas Iscariot

mǎtài

马太

Matthew

nádànyè

拿但业

Nathaniel

yóudà

犹大

James

duōmǎ

多马

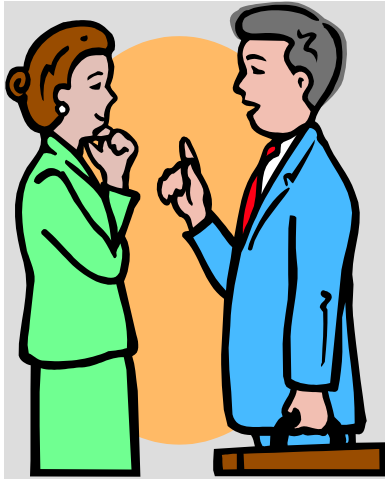
Thomas

fèili

费力

Phillip

How to invite someone to the Memorial



wǒ qǐng nín lái chūxí yīgè tèbié de jùhuì yēsū de shòunànjìniàn
我 请 您 来 出 席 一 个 特 别 的 聚 会 、 耶 稣 的 受 难 纪 念 。

I invite you to come attend a special meeting, Jesus Christ's Memorial.

jùhuì zài yuè hào wǎnshang jǔxíng de zhègè jùhuì
聚 会 在 # 月 # 号 晚 上 0:00* 举 行 的 。 这 个 聚 会

The meeting is on # month # day 0:00 p.m. held. This meeting

yǒu shénme yìyì ne qǐng kànkàn yuēhànfúyīn shàngdì shēnài
有 什 么 意 义 呢 ？ 请 看 看 约 翰 福 音 3:16: " 上 帝 深 爱

has what meaning? Please read John 3:16: "God deeply loved

shìrén shènzhì cìxià zìjǐ de dúshēngzǐ hǎo jiào fán xìncóng tā
世 人 、 甚 至 赐 下 自 己 的 独 生 子 、 好 叫 凡 信 从 他

people, even gave his own only begotten son, in order that all believing him

de rén dōu bùzhì mièwáng fǎn dé yǒngshēng huānyíng nín chūxí
的 人 都 不 致 灭 亡 、 反 得 永 生 。 " 欢 迎 您 出 席 。

people all not get destroyed, but get eternal life." You are welcome to attend.

(*Fill in your own congregation's Memorial time.)

1 /02 KM insert: Suggested Presentations

NOTE: The presentations in red are best suited for working Chinese territory, but the others can be adapted using the suggestion in presentation number three. Chinese people are often turned off when they hear the word “Bible” in the first 30 seconds of our presentation, so it may be best to say “an ancient book” instead.

- “Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu fājué, xiànzài Měiguó de shēnghuó yālì yuèlǎiyuèdà, hěnduō jiāting dōu yǒu nántí? Nǐ rènwéi zěnyàng cáinéng shǐ jiāting chéngwéi ānlèwō ne?”
——Col. 3:18-21
- “Jīntiān Huárén hěn zhòngshì jiàoyù. Fùmǔ xīwàng érnǚ jìnrù míngxiào, niánqīngrén yě xīwàng kǎoshàng dàxué. Nǐ rènwéi nǎ yī zhǒng jiàoyù yìchù zuì chángjiǔ ne?” ——2 Tim. 3:16,17
- “Nǐ juéde qiánjǐng yīpiàn guāngmíng háishì ling rén dānxīn ne? [Listen to response] Shèngjīng (*instead of saying “Shèngjīng”, you could say: **Yǒu yī běn gǔlǎo de shū**) zǎoyǐ yùgào jīntiān de nántí hé zhèxiē shì de jiéjú.” —— Prov. 2:21,22
**A change suggested for Chinese territory, since many Chinese people are turned off by the word “Bible”.*
- “Jīntiān rénren dōu shífēn guānxīn jiànkāng. Nǐ zhī bùzhīdào, jiānglái rénjiān de yìqìè jíbìng dōu huì xiāochú ne?” ——Isa. 33:24; Rev. 21:3,4
- “Nǐ zhī bùzhīdào Shèngjīng yùán, jiānglái zhǐyǒu yíge zhèngfǔ guǎnlǐ quán shìjiè?”
——Dan. 2:44; Mt. 6:9,10
- “Hěnduō rén yīnwèi xìngbié, zōngjiào, zhōngzú ér shòudào qíshì. Nǐ rènwéi Zàowùzhǔ duì zhèxiē qíshì yǒu shénme kànfǎ ne?” ——Acts 10:34,35
- “Jīntiān shèhuì wèntí shízài tàiduō, hěnduō rén dōu tīngyànle, qíngyuàn tīngjiàn yǒu shénme jiějué fāngfǎ. Wǒmen kěyǐ zài nǎlǐ zhǎodào shèhuì bìbìng de jiějué fāngfǎ ne?” ——2 Tim. 3:16,17
- “Rúguǒ quán shìjiè yóu Yēsū Jīdū tǒngzhì, nǐ rènwéi shìjiè huì biànchéng zěnyàng ne?” ——Ps. 72:7,8
- “Yēsū shīxíngguò bùshǎo qíjī. Rúguǒ kěyǐ, nǐ xīwàng Yēsū zài shīxíng yíge shénme qíjī ne?” ——Ps. 72:12-14,16
- “Nǐ zhīdào zhǔdǎowén (or “tiānzhǔjīng”) lǐ tídao de guó shì shénme ma?” ——Rev. 11:15

How to Start Studies in the *Bible Teach Book*- 1/06 KM insert

Many of us would be delighted to conduct a Bible study if only we could get the study started. The new book *What Does the Bible Really Teach?* can help us. The preface on pages 3-7 is designed to get the householder into a Bible discussion using the publication. Even those with limited experience in the ministry will find it easy to use to start studies.

- *You might try this approach using page 3:*

After mentioning a news item or a problem that is on the minds of people in your territory, direct the householder's attention to the questions in bold type on page 3, and invite him to comment. Then turn to pages 4-5.

- *Or you might prefer to start by highlighting pages 4-5:*

You could say, “**Jiǎrú zhèlǐ suǒ miáohuì de qíngkuàng zhēnde shíxiànlè, shì búshì hěnhǎo ne?**”

Or you might ask, “**Shèngjīng zài zhèlǐ suǒ yùgào de shì, nǐ xīwàng kànjiàn nǎxiē shì fāshēng?**”

Listen carefully to the householder's response.

If the householder shows a special interest in one of the scriptures, show him what the Bible teaches on that subject by considering the paragraphs in the book that discuss that text. (See box on this page of insert.) Consider the material just as you would on a Bible study. This can be done in five to ten minutes on the initial call right at the doorstep.

- *Another approach is to draw the person out using page 6:*

Direct the householder's attention to the questions at the bottom of the page, and ask:

“**Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu xiǎngguò zhèxiē wèntí ne?**”

If he expresses interest in one of the questions, turn to the paragraphs in the book that answer the question. (See box on this page of insert.) As you consider the information together, you are conducting a Bible study.

- *Page 7 may be used to lead into a demonstration of a Bible study:*

Read the first three sentences on the page, and then turn to chapter 3 and demonstrate a study using paragraphs 1-3. Arrange to return to discuss the answers to the questions in paragraph 3.

- *How to arrange to return:*

When concluding the initial study, arrange to continue the discussion. You might simply say:

“**Wǒmen zhǐ yòngle jǐ fēnzhōng, jiù cóng Shèngjīng zhōng zhǎodào yīgè zhòngyào wèntí de dá'àn. Xiàcì, wǒmen kěyǐ tāolùn [mention a question you plan to discuss next time]. Xià xīngqī de zhèige shíjiān, wǒ kěyǐ zàilái tànfǎng nǐ ma?**”

How to Offer the Bible Teach Book - KM 1/06 insert

The Last Days / Mòrì

▪ “Yī tīngdào mòrì, yǒuxiē rén jiù huì liánxiǎngdào cǎnjù hé zāinàn. Dànshì nǐ yǒu méiyǒu xiǎngguò, yuánlái Shèngjīng suǒ tídào de mòrì wánquán shì lìng yī huí shì, shì zhídé wǒmen rèqiè qīdài de rìzi? [Listen to response, then read Ps. 37:10] Qǐng liúyì mòrì zhīhòu, dīshàng de qíngkuàng huì biàncéng zěnyàng.” Read pg 82-84, pp21.

Everlasting life / Yǒngshēng

▪ “Rénrén dōu xīwàng shēntǐ jiànkāng, qīngchūn cháng zhù. Dàn nǐ rènwéi, yǒngyuǎn huó xiàqù shì kěnéng de ma? [Listen to response, then read Rev. 21:3, 4 & pg 54, pp 17] Yǒngshēng jiāng huì shì zěnyàngde ne? Zěnyàng cáinéng huòdé yǒngshēng? Qǐng liúyì wénzhāng tíchū de dá'àn.”

Family / Jiāting

▪ “Rénrén dōu xīwàng zìjǐ de jiā shìgè ānlèwō. Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu xiǎngguò, zěnyàng cáinéng shǐ jiāting shēnghuó měimǎn xìngfú? [Listen to response] Shèngjīng jiào wǒmen píng àixīn xíngshì. Jiāting gè chéngyuán yǐ àixīn bǐcǐ xiāng dài, jiù néng cùjìn Jiāting de kuàilè.” Read Eph. 5:1, 2 & pg 135, pp 4.

▪ “Fùmǔ dōu dānxīn érnǚ jiéjiāo huài péngyǒu, shòudào yǐnyòu zuò cuòshì. Nǐ rènwéi fùmǔ kěyǐ zěnyàng bǎohù érnǚ? [Listen to response, then read 1 Cor. 15:33 & pg 142, pp 19] Shūkān tíchū yīxiē lizi ràng fùmǔ jièjìng.” Open to picture on pg 142.

Young People / Niánqīng rén

▪ “Nǐ huì búhuì juéde jiāli yǒu hěnduō xiànzhì, fùmǔ jīngcháng bùxǔ nǐ zuò zhèyàng, zuò nàyàng? [Listen to response] Rénrén dōu xǐhuan zìyóu, bù xǐhuan biérén xiànzhì. Dànshì nǐ yǒu méiyǒu xiǎngguò, fúcóng fùmǔ bìdìng shǐ nǐ déyì? [Read Eph. 6:1-3 & pg 141-142, pp 17,18] Zhè běn shū tíchū yīxiē hǎo jiànyì, bāngzhù rén zuò ge yǒuwéi de niánqīng rén.”

Housing / Fángwū

▪ “Hěnduō dìqū dōu cùntǔ cùnjin, hěnduō rén dōu mǎibùqǐ lǐxiǎng de fángwū. Nǐ rènwéi huì búhuì yǒu yītiān, rénrén dōu yǒu shǔyú zìjǐ de jūsuǒ? [Listen to response, then read Isa. 65:21, 22 & pg 34, pp 20] Zhè běn shū jiěshì Shàngdì huì zěnyàng shǐ zhègè xīwàng shíxiàn.”

Jehovah God / Yēhéhuá Shàngdì

▪ “Xǔduō rén sòngniàn zhǔdǎowén, qíqíu Shàngdì de míng bèi zūnwéishèng. Jiùjìng Shàngdì de míngzì shì shénme? [Listen to response, read Ps. 83:18 & pg. 195, pp 2,3] Dúdú zhè běn shū nǐ jiù huì zhīdào, Yēhéhuá shì zěnyàng de Shàngdì. Tā wèi rénlèi dìnglè shénme měihǎo de zhǐyì.”

Jesus Christ / Yēsū Jīdū

▪ “Shìshàng xǔduō rén dōu tīngguò Yēsū zhège míngzì. Yǒuxiē rén shuō tā zhǐshì yíge wěirén, yǒuxiē rén jiù dāng tā shì quánnéng de Shàngdì lái chóngrì. Nǐ rènwéi Yēsū de shēnfèn shì shénme?” [Listen to response, then read John 17:3 & pgs 37-38, pp 3] Point out the questions at the beginning of chapter 4.

Prayer / Dǎogào

▪ “Nǐ rènwéi Shàngdì huì huíyìng rén de dǎogào ma? [Listen to response, then read 1 Jo. 5:14,15 & pg 170-172, pp 16-18] Zhè běn shū jiěshì wèishénme wǒmen yīnggāi dǎogào, yǐjǐ dǎogào yào méng Shàngdì chuītīng jiù bìxū fúhé shénme tiáojiàn.”

Religion / Zōngjiào

▪ “Yībānrén dōu rènwéi zōngjiào kěyǐ bāngzhù rén jiějué nántí, dàn kàndào yǒuxiē zōngjiào búdàn bùnéng bāngzhù rén, hái zhìzàole hěnduō wèntí. Nǐ rènwéi zōngjiào yǒu méiyǒu dǎo rén xiàng shàn, jiàodǎo rén zuò duì de shì ne? [Listen to response, read Mt. 7:13,14 & pg 146 , pp 5] Zhè zhāng jǔchū liùge tèzhēng, bāngzhù wǒmen biànmíng nǎ yīqún rén xìnfèng zhèngquè de zōngjiào.” Show them the points listed on pg 147.

Suffering / Cǎnjù/kǔnàn

▪ “Měi dāng fāshēng cǎnjù, hěnduō rén jiù bùjīn huì wèn: Rúguǒ zhēnde yǒu Shàngdì, tā guānxīn rén ma? Tā kàndào rénjiān de zhǒngzhǒng kǔnàn ma? Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu xiǎngguò zhèxiē wèntí? [Listen to response, then read 1 Pe. 5:7 & pg 11 pp 11] Zhè běn shū shuōmíng, Shàngdì huì zěnyàng zhōngzhǐ rénjiān jíkǔ.” Point out the questions at the beginning of the lesson on pg 106.

War/Peace / Zhànzhēng/héping

▪ “Zìgǔ yǐlái, rén dōu zhùyuan tiānxià tàipíng. Dànshì, nǐ juéde shìjiè héping zhǐshìge mèngxiǎng ma? [Listen to response, read Ps. shīpiān 46:8,9] Zhè běn shū tánjí Shàngdì zěnyàng shíxiàn tā de yīngxǔ, wèirén dàilái héping.” Open to the picture on pg 35, discuss pgs. 33-34, pp 17-21. [Box on pg 5]

How to talk to householder about donations: Zěnyàng gēn zhùhù tánjí zìyuàn juānxiàn ānpái:

“Rúguǒ nǐ xǐhuān zuò yìdiǎn juānxiàn, juānzhù wǒmen zài quánqíu chuándào gōngzuò, wǒmen hěn lèyì jiēshòu.”

“Suīrán wǒmen de shūkān méiyǒu dìngjià, hěnduō rén dōu xǐhuān juānzhù wǒmen zài quánqíu xuānyáng wángguó de gōngzuò. Juān duōshǎo wánquán suíyì, wǒmen hěn lèyì jiēshòu.”

“Wǒmen de shūkān shì miǎnfèi fēnfā gěi gōngzhòng de, dàn hěnduō rén dōu xiǎng zhīdào wǒmen de gōngzuò shì zěnyàng wéichí de. Wǒmen de gōngzuò wánquán shì yóu dúzhě de juānkuǎn wéichí de. Rúguǒ nǐ xǐhuān zuò yìdiǎn juānxiàn, wǒmen hěn lèyì jiēshòu.”

KM 1/06 (1) Question, (2) Scripture, and (3) Chapter

A simple way to present *What Does the Bible Really Teach?* is to (1) raise a viewpoint question, (2) read an appropriate scripture, and (3) feature a chapter in the book that discusses that subject by reading the introductory questions under the chapter title. If the householder shows interest, you may be able to demonstrate a Bible study using the opening paragraphs of that chapter.

- “Nǐ rènwéi qūqū fánrén néng rènshi quánnéng de chuàngzàozhǔ ma? Qǐng kànkàn zhè jié jīngwén zěnyàng shuō.” Read Acts 17:26, 27, listen to householder’s reply, then to turn to chapter 1.
- “Jīntiān wǒmen miànduì shēnghuó de zhǒngzhǒng yālì, nǐ rènwéi wǒmen néng zhǎozhao ānwèi hé xīwàng ma?” Read Romans 15:4, listen to householder’s reply, then to turn to chapter 2.
- “Rúguǒ nǐ yǒu nénglì gǎishàn rén de shēnghuó, nǐ huì dàilái zhè jié jīngwén suǒ tídao de gǎibiàn ma?” Read Revelation 21:4, listen to householder’s reply, then to turn to chapter 3.
- “Zhè shǒu shī miáoshù yīgè měihǎo de qiánjǐng, nǐ rènwéi wǒmen de érnǚ huì búhuì shēnghuó zài zhèyàng de huánjìng ne?” Read Psalm 37:10,11, listen to householder’s reply, then to turn to chapter 3.
- “Nǐ rènwéi zhèyàng de shì huì búhuì yǒu yītiān shíxiàn ne?” Read Isaiah 33:24, listen to householder’s reply, then to turn to chapter 3.
- “Nǐ rènwéi rén qùshì zhīhòu háinéng zhīdào huórén zài zuò xiē shénme ma?” Listen to householder’s reply, read Ecclesiastes 9:5, then turn to chapter 6.
- “Zhè liǎng jié jīngwén zhǐchū, yǒu yītiān wǒmen huì zàicì gēn qùshì de qīnrén chóngjù, nǐ rènwéi zhè jiàn shì huì fāshēng ma?” Read John 5:28,29, listen to householder’s reply, then to turn to chapter 7.

- “Yēsū de yīgè zhùmíng dǎogào shuō, yuàn Shàngdì de zhǐyì zài dìshàng shíxiàn, xiàng zài tiānshàng yīyàng. Nǐ rènwéi zhè jiàn shì huì shíxiàn ma?” Read Matthew 6:9,10, listen to householder’s reply, then to turn to chapter 8.
- “Nǐ rènwéi wǒmen zhèng shēnghuó zài zhège yùán suǒ miáoshù de rìzi ma?” Read 2 Timothy 3:1-4, listen to householder’s reply, then to turn to chapter 9.
- “Xǔduō rén dōu bù míngbái, wèishéme rénlèi de wèntí yuèláiyuèzāo, nǐ rènwéi yǒu kěnéng shì zhèlǐ suǒ shuō de yuányīn ma?” Read Revelation 12:9, listen to householder’s reply, then turn to chapter 10.
- “Nǐ xiǎng zhīdào zhège wèntí de dá'àn ma?” Read Job 21:7, let householder reply, then turn to chapter 11.
- “Nǐ rènwéi shíjiàn Shèngjīng zhège jiànyì, néng bāngzhù rén xiǎngyǒu měimǎn xìngfú de jiāting shēnghuó ma?” Read Ephesians 5:33, let householder reply, then turn to chapter 14.

Suggested Brochure Presentations – 6/05 KM insert

“A Book for All People” – “Yī běn Zàoyì Wànmín de Shū”

“Jù nǐ suǒ zhī, xiànjīn shìjiè shàng fānyì chéng zuìduō zhǒng yǔyán de shì nǎ yī běn shū ne?” (show picture on page 12, and show the the Bible has already been circulated in China for about 200 years; say: “Shèngjīng zài Zhōngguó yuánlái yǐjīng liúchuánle chàbùduō liǎngbǎi nián”; Rev. 14:6)

“Nǐ rènwéi yǒu shénme fāngfǎ kěyǐ gǎishàn rénjì guānxì ne?” (box on pg 26, pp 2; Prov. 12:18)

When you meet Buddhists or non-religious people (“bàishén” or “búxìnjiào” de rén), you could introduce the “Lasting Peace and Happiness” brochure:

“Héngjiǔde Píng'ān hé Xìngfú– Zěnyàng Cáinéng Zhǎozháo? ”

“Wúlùn wǒmen bài shénme shén, xìn shénme jiào, dōu xīwàng shìjiè hépíng, shēnghuó kuàilè, duì ma? [Listen to response] Qǐng kànkàn, Shèngjīng zěnyàng miáoshù rénlèi jiāng huì xiǎngyǒu hépíng kuàilè de shēnghuó. [Read Ps. 37:11] Wǒmen zěnmē zhīdào zhè jiàn shì bùjiǔ jiù huì shíxiàn ne?” Turn to page 29, read the heading and then give them the brochure. —“KM” Feb 1998, pg 5.

Another presentation for “Lasting Peace” brochure:

“Zhōngguó rén yǒu jù huà: 'jìn zhūzhě chī, jìn mòzhě hēi', nǐ tóngyì ma? [Listen to response] Zhídé liúyì de shì, Shèngjīng zài chàbùduō sānqiānnián qián jìxiàle yījù jīnyù liángyán, gēn zhèjùhuà bùmóuéhé. [Read Prov. 13:20] Xiànjīn Shèngjīng yǐjīng fānyìchéng liǎngqiānduō zhǒng yǔyán, shìhé suǒyǒu wénhuà bèijǐng de rén yuèdú. Wúlùn bàishén háishi xìnjiào, dōu yídìng néng cóng Shèngjīng déyì.” Show illustration on pg 17, read the caption, and give them the brochure.

Another presentation for “Lasting Peace” brochure:

“Yīwǎng xǔduō jiāting dōu yǒu běn 'tōngshèng' (yòujiào 'huángli'), yīnwèi tāmen rènwéi zhèběnshū nénggòu jiào rén zěnyàng qū jí bì xiōng. Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu xiǎngguò, yuánlái shìshàng yǒu yīběnshū, zhēn de nénggòu gěi rén zhìhuì, zhùrén bìkǎi rénsēng xǔduō yánzhòng de wèntí ne? [Listen to response, then read 1 Tim. 6:9,10] Zhè běn cèzi shuōmíng le Shèngjīng de shíyòng zhìhuì.” Turn to page 16, discuss information in paragraph 14, and then give them the brochure.

“Satisfying Life” brochure – “Rúhé Huódé Xīnmǎnyìzú”

“Jiāting běn gāi shì ge ānlèwō, zhǐ kěxí, xiànjīn jiāting wèntí yuèláiyuè duō. Nǐ rènwéi wǒmen yào zěnyàng zuò, cáinéng xiǎngyǒu xìngfú de jiāting shēnghuó? [Listen to response, and then read Col. 3:18–21] Zhè běn cèzi zài 5 gēn 6 yè tígōngle yīxiē yǒuguān jiāting shēnghuó de zīliào, búlùn wǒmen xìn bùxìnjiào, dōu shífēn héyòng.” Give them the brochure, and set a time to return and discuss information in brochure.

Another possible presentation for the “Satisfying Life” brochure:

“Xiànjīn shēnghuó yāli yuèláiyuèdà, búlùn wǒmen bàishén huòzhě xìnjiào, dōu xiǎng zhīdào yǒu shénme fāngfǎ kěyǐ jiǎnyā, duì ma? [Listen to response] Yǒu bù jīngshū jìzǎile xǔduō jīnyù liángyán, néng bāngzhù wǒmen jiǎnqīng shēnghuó de yāli . Qǐng nǐ kànkàn yīxià yījùhuà.” Read Prov. 17:22, then turn to pg 9, mention the information in paragraph 14, and then give them the brochure.

Diànhuà Jiànzhèng Jièshàocí : Phone witnessing Presentations 1/10 KM insert

- “Nǐ hǎo, wǒ xìng [], shìgè Jīdūtú yìgōng. Wǒ dǎ diànhuà gěi nǐ, yīnwèi méi jīhuì qīnzì dào nǐ jiā tànǎng nǐ. Wǒ zhù zài [] Wǒ hěnxiǎng tīngtīng nǐ duì yíge wèntí de yìjiàn....[mention an interest arousing question].”
- “Nǐ hǎo, wǒ xìng [], wǒmen zuò yìwù de Shèngjīng jiàoyù gōngzuò. Nǐ yǒuméiyǒu xiǎngguò....[mention an interest arousing question]...?”
- “Nǐ hǎo, wǒ xìng []。 Wǒ búshì tuīxiāoyuán, wǒ dǎ diànhuà lái shì xiǎng gēn nǐ tántán yíge Shèngjīng de xīnxi. Hěnduōrén dōu guānxīn zěnyàng cáinéng huó de gèng kuàilè...”

[Then continue with your presentation. You may read a suggestion from the *Reasoning* book, *Our Kingdom Ministry*, or prepare your own.]

[or say “Hěnduōrén dōu guānxīn...” and then mention a news report that is on people’s minds].”

[Then continue with your presentation. You may read a suggestion from the *Reasoning* book, *Our Kingdom Ministry*, or prepare your own.]

Chūcì tōnghuà shí jiù kāishǐ Shèngjīng tāolùn (How to start a study on first call.)

- “Nǐ hǎo, wǒ xìng[], wǒ zhù zài []. Wǒ zuò yìwù de Shèngjīng jiàoyù gōngzuò, hěn xiǎng bāngzhù rén míngbái Shèngjīng, yě hěn lèyì xiàng nǐ tígōng yíge miǎnfèi de Shèngjīng kèchéng. Rúguǒ nǐ xiǎng xuéxí Shèngjīng, wǒ kěyǐ ānpái shíjiān zài diànhuà lǐ gēn nǐ tāolùn, tāolùn shíjiān hé chángdù shì suíyì de. Nǐ xiǎngbùxiǎng zhīdào.....[Mention 2 or 3 questions of interest from the Bible Teach book] Nǐ duì nǎ yíge tímù zuì gǎn xìngqù ne? [Pause and listen to response] Gāngcái wǒ shuō de tímù shì láizì yī běn shū, jiào “Biànmíng Shèngjīng de zhēnlǐ”. Wǒ xiǎng sòng zhè běn shū gěi nǐ, qǐngwèn kěyǐ yòng shénme fāngfǎ jiāo gěi nǐ?” [Listen to response]

Rúguǒ zhùhù méiyǒu jíshí dāyìng... (What to say if householder hesitates...)

- “Méiwèntí, huòzhě wǒ guò jǐ tiān zài dǎ diànhuà gěi nǐ, gēn nǐ tāolùn líng yíge nǐ gǎn xìngqù de Shèngjīng tímù. Tōngcháng zhège shíjiān nǐ dōu zài jiā ma?”

If householder says... “Wǒ hěn máng,” (“I am very busy.”)

- “Nàme, shénme shíjiān dǎ diànhuà gěi nǐ zuì fāngbiàn ne?”
- “Jìrán nǐ hěn máng, wǒ huì jǐnkuài shuōwán.”

If householder says... “Nǐ dài biǎo nǎge jīgòu?” (“What organization do you represent?”)

- “Wǒmen shì yīgè Jīdūtú tuántǐ, jiào Yēhéhuá Jiànzhèngrén.” Then keep talking, no need to pause.

“Nǐ zěnmē zhīdào wǒ de diànhuà hàomǎ?” (“How did you get my phone number?”)

- “Wǒ zài diànhuà gōngsī de wǎngyè suíjī zhǎodào de.” Then keep talking, no need to pause.

Rúguǒ zhùhù yāoqiú Yēhéhuá Jiànzhèng rén bù yào zài dǎ diànhuà gěi tā.....

(How to respond to a DO NOT CALL request)

- Say: “Hǎo, wǒ zūnzhòng nǐ de juédìng. Wǒ huì jìxià nǐ de yāoqiú.” *and discontinue your presentation.* [A dated note with the name of the person should then be placed in the territory envelope.]

Rúguǒ duìfāng yòng diànhuà liúyánjī..... (What to say on an answering machine)

- “Hěn bàoqiàn jīntiān zhǎobudào nǐ. Wǒ xìng []. Wǒ dǎ diànhuà gěi nǐ, xiǎng yāoqǐng nǐ lái tīng yīgè Shèngjīng yǎnjiǎng, tímù shì [say Sunday’s Public Talk title]. Jùhuì shì zài [say Sunday’s meeting date and time] jǔxíng de. Dìdiǎn shì [say Kingdom Hall address]. Jùhuì búshè quànjuān. ”
- “Nǐ hǎo, wǒ xìng [], wǒmen zài shèqū lǐ zuò yìgōng, bāngzhù rén míngbái Shèngjīng. Wǒ huì zài dǎ diànhuà gěi nǐ.”

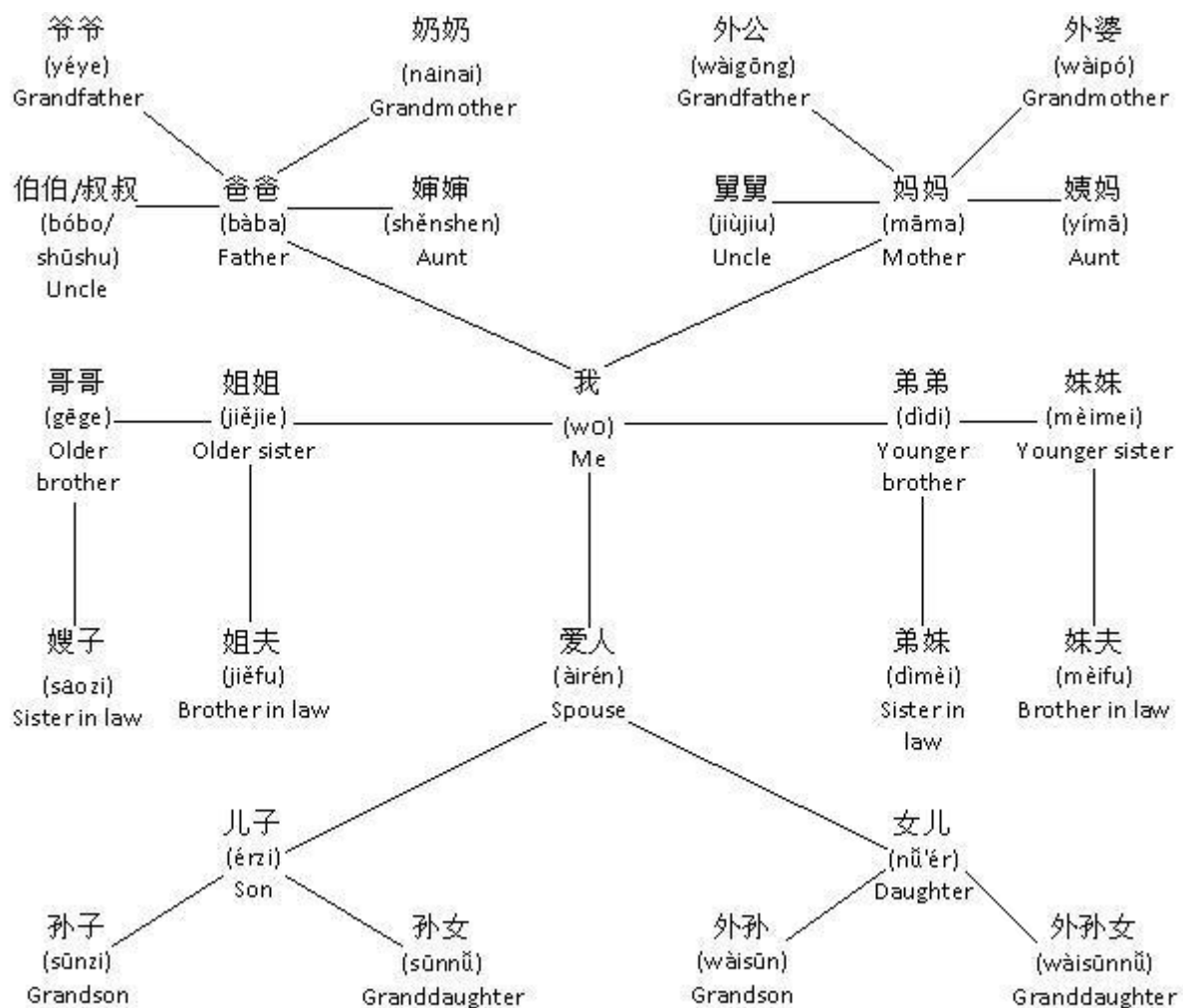
Jiéshù tánhuà qián: (What to say when concluding the conversation....)

- “Guānyú wǒmen gāngcái tāolùn de tímù, wǒ yǒu yī běn shū kěyǐ gěi nǐ gèngduō cānkǎo zīliào. Wǒ xīwàng sòng zhè běn shū gěi nǐ, qǐngwèn kěyǐ yòng shénme fāngfǎ jiāogěi nǐ?”
- “Hěn gāoxìng kěyǐ gēn nǐ jiāotán, wǒ hěn xiǎng xiàcì kěyǐ tántán [mention an interesting question], yìqǐ zhǎochū zhège wèntí de dá’àn. Zhège shíjiān dǎ diànhuà gěi nǐ fāngbiàn ma?”

Rúguǒ duìfāng jùjué nǐ tàn fǎng tā: (What to say if they don’t want you to visit)

- “Rúguǒ nǐ xǐhuan, wǒ kěyǐ yóujì zhè běn shū gěi nǐ.” (I could mail this book to you, if you like.)
- “Rúguǒ nǐ yǒu shàngwǎng dehuà, huānyíng nǐ dēngrù wǒmen de wǎngzhàn, wǎngzhǐ shì: jw.org. Zài zhège wǎngzhàn nǐ yěxǔ huì zhǎodào yìxiē nǐ gǎn xìngqù de Shèngjīng zīliào.”
- “Wǒ hěn gāoxìng gēn nǐ jiāotán, xiǎng yāoqǐng nǐ lái tīng yīgè Shèngjīng yǎnjiǎng, tímù shì: [Sunday’s Public Talk title]. Jùhuì shì zài [meeting date and time] jǔxíng de. Dìdiǎn shì: [Kingdom Hall address]. Jùhuì búshè quànjuān. ”

CHINESE FAMILY RELATIONSHIPS



Lesson 3: Supplemental Exercises for “Time and Chinese Grammar”, pg. 32

Translate the following sentences into Chinese:

1. I am going to the Kingdom Hall tomorrow.
2. We study the Watchtower on Thursday at 3:30 pm.
3. Brother Wang preaches on Wednesday and Saturday.
4. They come to America on Sunday.
5. Ms. Liu studies the Bible on Tuesday.

GRAMMAR CHART

Subject	Time	Aux. Verb	Verb	Object
Wǒ	míngtiān	qù	chuán	dào.

Wǒ míngtiān qù chuándào. I will go preaching tomorrow.

Lesson 3: GRAMMAR CHART: “qù” 去 “to go”

Subject	Go	Verb	Object
Zhǎnglǎo	qù	chuán	dào.
	qù		
	qù		
	qù		
	qù		
	qù		

Zhǎnglǎo qù chuándào. The elder(s) go preaching.

When you are finished filling out these grammar charts, translate all your sentences into English.

Lesson 11 Supplemental exercise:

Fill in the Missing Words

1. 耶稣一次 ___ 一次驱逐邪灵，使邪灵不能___缠着受害人。

Yēsū yīcì ____ yīcì qūzhú xiéling, shǐ xiéling bùnéng ___ chánzhe shòuhài rén.

Again and again, when Jesus ordered them out, he made the wicked spirits unable to control their victims again.

2. 摩西一次 ___ 一次去见法老，给他机会改变主意，免得埃及___被灾殃打击。

Móxi yīcì ___ yīcì qù jiàn Fǎlǎo, gěi tā jīhuì gǎibiàn zhǔyì, miǎnde Aiji ___ bèi zāiyāng dǎjī.

Again and again, Moses appeared before Pharaoh to offer him an opportunity to avoid being plagued again.

3. “现在，我不___是个残暴的人。我教导别人学习圣经。我的生活___充实___有意义。”

“Xiànzài, wǒ bù_____ shìgè cánbào de rén. Wǒ jiàodǎo biérén xuéxí shèngjīng. Wǒ de shēnghuó _____ chōngshí _____ yǒu yìyì.”

“Now I am no longer a violent man. I teach God’s Word. My life has true direction and purpose.””

4. “耶和华啊，你 ___良善， ___乐意宽恕人。”（诗篇 86:5）

“Yēhéhuá a, nǐ ___ liáng shàn, ___ lèyì kuānshù rén.”

“You, O Jehovah, are good and ready to forgive.” (Psalm 86:5)

5. “上帝要擦去他们的所有眼泪，不___有死亡，也不___有哀恸、呼号、痛苦。”

“Shàngdì yào cāqù tāmen de suǒyǒu yǎnlèi, bù ___ yǒu sǐwáng, yě bù ___ yǒu āitòng, hūháo, tòngkǔ.”

“He will wipe out every tear from their eyes, and death will be no more, neither will mourning nor outcry nor pain be anymore.” (Revelation 21:4)

6. 她已经有三个孩子，现在___怀孕了。她跟丈夫说，不想___有一个孩子了。

Tā yǐjīng yǒu sān ge hái zi, xiànzài ___ huáiyùn le. Tā gēn zhàngfū shuō bu xiǎng ___ yǒu yīgè hái zǐ le.

A Mexican woman named Anita had three children and was pregnant once again. She told her husband that she did not want another baby.

7. 这种事太多了，我不要___去学校了！

Zhè zhǒng shì tài duō le, wǒ bù yào ___ qù xué xiào le!

Sometimes it just got to be too much, and I didn't want to go to school again!

8. “啊，___多赚了三分钱！”

“A, ___ duō zhuàn le sān fēn qián!”

“Ah, again that's three cents more earned!”

9. “我偷偷寄电邮给一个我喜欢的男孩，爸爸妈妈发现了，叫我别___这么做。我答应了，但还是继续寄，给爸爸妈妈发现我就道歉，答应不___寄，可是后来___寄。”

“Wǒ tōutōu jì diànyóu gěi yīgè wǒ xǐhuan de nánhái, Bàba Māmā fāxiàn le, jiào wǒ bié ___ zhè me zuò. Wǒ dāyìng le, dàn hái shì jì xù jì, gěi Bàba Māmā fāxiàn wǒ jiù dàoqiàn, dāyìng bù ___ jì, kěshì hòulái ___ jì.” (TIP: jì means “to mail”)

“I was secretly e-mailing a boy I liked. My parents found out about it and told me not to do it again. I promised that I would, but I didn't. I'd e-mail the boy, my parents would find out, I'd apologize and promise not to mail him again, but then later I'd email him again.”

10. 爱沙尼亚政府在 1934 年__禁止见证人播放圣经演讲。

Àishāníyǎ zhèngfǔ zài 1934 nián ___ jìnzhǐ Jiànzhèngrén bòfàng Shèngjīng yǎnjiǎng.

Estonian authorities banned the lectures again in 1934.

11. 以色列人__唱歌__跳舞。

Yǐsèlièrén ___ chàngē ___ tiàowǔ.

The Israelites sang and danced.

12. “噢，__来了！”

“Ō, ___ lái le!”

“Oh, here we go again!”

13. 其中一个同学说：“你__一个人啊？”

Qízhōng yīgè tóngxué shuō: “Nǐ ___ yīgè rén a?”

A fellow student says: “All alone again?”

14. 他主人的妻子再三要他与她同寝，现在她__来引诱约瑟了！

Tā zhǔrén de qīzi zàisān yào tā yǔ tā tóngqǐn, xiànzài tā ____ lái yǐnyòu Yuēsè le!

His master's wife has repeatedly implored him to have relations with her. Now she's trying again!

Lesson 13: “Rúguǒ... jiù” practice sheet

Translate the following sentences into English. First try to see how many things you can understand without a dictionary, then use a dictionary to look up the things you don't recognize.

1. 我们如果爱耶和華的話，就不会做他憎惡的事。

Wǒmen rúguǒ ài Yēhéhuá de huà, jiù búhuì zuò tā zēngwù de shì.

2. 復活的人如果聽從他，就能永遠活着。

Fùhuó de rén rúguǒ tīngcóng tā, jiù néng yǒngyuǎn huózhe.

3. 他們如果聽從上帝，就能永遠在地上的樂園里生活。

Tāmen rúguǒ tīngcóng Shàngdì, jiù néng yǒngyuǎn zài dìshàng de lèyuán lǐ shēnghuó.

4. 他們如果吃這棵樹上的果子的話，就一定會死。

Tāmen rúguǒ chī zhè kē shù shàng de guǒzi dehuà , jiù yídìng huì sǐ.

5. 你如果想聽從上帝，就一定要讀聖經，明白聖經。

Nǐ rúguǒ xiǎng tīngcóng Shàngdì, jiù yídìng yào dú Shèngjīng, míngbai Shèngjīng.

6. 如果找到的話，我們的難題就可以解決了。

Rúguǒ zhǎodào dehuà, wǒmen de nántí jiù kěyǐ jiějué le.

Lesson 13: “Hǎoxiàng... yíyàng” practice sheet

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 圣经好像慈父写给孩子的信一样。

Shèngjīng hǎoxiàng cífù xiěgěi háizi de xìn yíyàng.

2. 人死了，就好像熟睡了一样。

Rén sǐ le, jiù hǎoxiàng shúshuì le yíyàng.

3. 上帝能够唤醒死去的人，就好像你能够叫醒睡着的人一样。

Shàngdì néng huànxǐng sǐqù de rén, jiù hǎoxiàng nǐ nénggòu jiàoxing shuìzhào de rén yíyàng.

4. “你们每一个人，也该爱妻子，好像爱自己一样。”

“Nǐmen měi yí gè rén, yě gāi ài qīzi, hǎoxiàng ài zìjǐ yíyàng...”

5. “你们祷告，不要反反复复说同样的话，好像列国的世人一样...”

“Nǐmen dǎogào, búyào fǎnfǎnfùfù shuō tóngyàng de huà, hǎoxiàng lièguó de shìrén yíyàng.”

Index:

Front page: Map of China ([Correction- Inner Mongolia in Mandarin is: Nèiménggǔ](#))

Preface: Study hints for language students, Grammar practice

Lesson One: Numbers, **Grammar:** ordinal numbers, Basic words, **Grammar:** New verb: “**shì**” (to be), basic presentation, Common Courtesies, Chinese phonetic drill, Bible books

Lesson Two: Practical vocabulary (including names of months & days of the week), useful expressions, Mt. 6:9, New presentation, **Grammar:** New verb: “**yǒu**” (to have), Important verbs, Telling Time, Phonetic Drill: Practice pyramids

Lesson Three: Preaching Work vocabulary, Mk. 13:10, Tone practice, **Grammar:** Possessive (“**de**”), Useful sentences for the ministry, **Question words**, **BioDatabase:** Practice using question words, Time & Chinese Grammar, **Reading practice:** excerpt from “Teacher” book, **Grammar:** New verb: “**qù**”(to go), New Presentation

Lesson Four: Kingdom Hall Vocabulary, Useful expressions, Chinese phonetic drill, **Grammar:** Auxiliary verbs: **kěyǐ, huì, & néng** along with a **grammar chart**, The Unique Makeup of Chinese Words, **Grammar:** the Differences Between **bù & méi**, **Grammar:** Practice with simple descriptive sentences (Adjectives), **Grammar Chart:** Using Adjectives, New Presentation

Lesson Five: Family Vocabulary, Eph. 5:33, **BioDatabase:** Practice using common questions, Common Adjectives, **Grammar:** Differences between **hěn & shì**, **Dramatic Acting** (Common Bible accounts), Cultural Note, Return Visit Presentation

Lesson Six: Heaven and Earth Vocabulary, Gen. 1:1, **New verb:** “**zuò**” (to make, do), **Reading and Pronunciation Practice**, **Grammar:** Adverbs, Bible Characters, **Grammar:** How to Talk about what you WILL DO in the future, **BioDatabase** “Paradise”, Morning Activities, **Grammar:** VO complexes

Lesson Seven: Satan’s World, 1 Pe. 5:7, **Reading & Pronunciation Practice**, **Grammar: Measure Words**, **Biodatabase:** “Which One?”, How to Think Simply, **Imperatives (yīnggāi, bìxū, & xūyǎo)**, Starting a Bible Study in the Bible Teach book

- Lesson Eight:** Religion Vocabulary, 1 Cor. 3:9, **Grammar:** Position Words “zài”, **Reading & Pronunciation Practice, Grammar :** How to Say: “to arrive at” or “to go to” (“dào”), **Grammar Chart:** using dào, **BioDatabase:** Getting to Know the Householder, **Grammar:** The Difference between “rènshi” & “zhīdào” (to know), Practice with Presentations
- Lesson Nine:** Our Relationship with God & Prayer, James 4:8, Ways to Open a Prayer, Prayer Related Sentences, How to Close a Prayer, **Grammar:** xiàng, duì, & wèi, **Grammar:** hái méiyǒu (still haven’t, haven’t yet), **BioDatabase:** examples of how to use “zuò”, “le”, & “guò” (completed action), “Warning Examples” (Qiánchējiàn) **Dramatic Acting, Grammar charts:** wèi, guò, & xiàng
- Lesson Ten:** Body Parts & Clothing, (Hokey Pokey), Useful sentences and phrases, Scriptural examples of Vocabulary, Characters from Hebrew Scriptures, **Grammar:** More & Most: “gèng” and “zuì”, **Grammar:** How to Say “All”: suǒyǒu de & dōu, Dialogue: A Bible Study, **Grammar:** How to Say “Also”: yě, hái yǒu, gēn, yǔ
- Lesson Eleven:** Everyday Vocabulary (Food & Furniture, etc), Some useful Phrases, **Dramatic Acting, Grammar:** shǐ, jiào, lìng, & rang (to make or to cause to be), Mt. 28:19 & Mk 1:40, Colors, Skit: “Come in!”, **Grammar:** How to say “again” (“yòu” & “zài”), Presentation: Education, Homework sentences
- Lesson Twelve:** Eastern Religion Vocabulary, **Grammar:** zhě, tú, lùn, jiā, How to Say: “Would you Like to Come with Us to the Meeting?”; **closed book QUIZ**
- Lesson Thirteen:** Time Vocabulary, Fruitage of the Spirit, **Grammar:** Making Comparisons (“hǎoxiàng” and “rú”), Mt. 3:16, Is. 48:18, **Grammar:** How to say “When” or “While” (“de shíhòu”) along with a story: Zhang Xiaohong de zaoshang, Colors, The Many Uses of “shàng” & “xià”, **BioDatabase:** Everyday Expressions, **Grammar:** How to Use a Line of Reasoning (“rúguǒ” & “jiù”), James 4:17, 1 Jo. 4:8, **Grammar Charts:** “hǎoxiàng.. yíyàng”, “gēn.... yíyàng”, “de shíhòu”, “rúguǒ... jiù”
- Lesson Fourteen:** Bible Study Vocabulary, Homework sentences, **Grammar:** How to Contrast Two Different Activities or Persons (“bǐ”), 1 Cor. 1:25, Mt. 6:25, Jo. 14:28, How to say: “Would you like me to Pick you Up?”, **Grammar:** In the Process of Doing Something (“zhèngzài” & “zhe”), 1 Jo 2:17, **Dramatic Acting Skit:** “Not At Home”, **Grammar:** How to Make a Suggestion (“ba”), **Grammar Charts:** ba, zhèngzài, & bǐ (making comparisons)
- Lesson Fifteen:** The Time of the End Vocabulary, **Dramatic Acting Skit:** “The Last Days”, **Grammar:** How to Say: Got or By (“bèi”) with grammar chart, New VO Complexes & Adverbs, **Grammar:** More and More (yuè lái)

yuè), New Presentation, **Biographical Database**: How old are you? ,
Grammar: Near & Far (lí, jìn, & yuǎn), Homework sentences, **Grammar charts**: lí, yuèláiyuè

Lesson Sixteen: Personality Vocabulary, Jehovah’s Four Outstanding Qualities, Adjectives & Modifying Phrases, Mt. 5:5, 7, 8, **Grammar**: How to say “To Take” (“bǎ”), **Grammar**: How to say “Only”, “Just” (“zhǐ”), Practical Conversation Practice: Informal Witnessing, Cultural Tip, Homework Sentences, **Grammar Charts**: “bǎ” and “zhǐ”

Lesson Seventeen: Weather Vocabulary, Common Expression: “mànmàn zǒu”, **Grammar**: “then and only then” conditional (“cái”), Important Verbs, More VO Complexes: Common Expressions, **Grammar**: More ways to say “and” or “furthermore” (“yǐjǐ”, “ér”, & “bìng”), **Grammar**: How to say “There is”, “There are,”(yǒu), Homework sentences, **Grammar chart**: Practice using “cái” in sentences

Lesson Eighteen: Theocratic Vocabulary, **Grammar**: Who, Which, & That (“suǒ”), Chinese Idioms (Chéngyǔ), Useful VO Complexes, **Grammar**: How to say “Other than,” or “Besides” (“Chú le... zhīwài or yǐwài”) along with a **grammar chart**, Examples of how to use this week’s vocabulary in sentences, Homework sentences, **Grammar charts**: Practice with “suǒ” & “búshì... érshì...” sentences

Appendix

139-145 For Reference – List of Useful Verbs

146-147 Things You May Hear in the Ministry

148 Chinese Food Menu

149 How to Say “Of”

150 Memorial of Christ’s Death Vocabulary

151 How to invite someone to the Memorial

152 Suggested presentations 1/02 KM insert

153 How to Start Studies in the Bible Teach book 1/06 KM insert

154-6 How to Offer the Bible Teach Book KM 1/06 Insert

156-7 Question, Scripture, and Chapter KM 1/06

157-8 Suggested Brochure Presentations 6/05 KM insert

159-160 Telephone Witnessing 1/10 KM insert

161 Chinese Family Tree Vocabulary

161-168 Supplemental exercises to be used during class or for homework

169-171 Index